Zoom-Zoom

All children instinctively know it.

A few adults still remember it.

One unique car company refuses to outgrow it.

In grown-up language, it means the exhilaration and liberation that come from experiencing sheer motion.

But as usual, children put it much better and simply call it "Go Zoom-Zoom."

We practice it every day.

It's why we build the kind of cars we do.

Zoom-Zoom.

Can we re-awaken it in you today?
A Word to Mazda Owners

Thank you for choosing a Mazda. We at Mazda design and build vehicles with complete customer satisfaction in mind.

To help ensure enjoyable and trouble-free operation of your Mazda, read this manual carefully and follow its recommendations.

Regular servicing of your vehicle by an expert repairer helps maintain both its roadworthiness and its resale value. A world-wide network of Authorised Mazda Repairers can help you with their professional servicing expertise. Their specially trained personnel are best qualified to service your Mazda vehicle properly and exactly. Also, they are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools and equipment specially developed for servicing Mazda vehicles. When maintenance or service is necessary we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

We assure you that all of us at Mazda have an ongoing interest in your motoring pleasure and in your full satisfaction with your Mazda product.

Mazda Motor Corporation
HIROSHIMA, JAPAN

Important Notes About This Manual

Keep this manual in the glove box as a handy reference for the safe and enjoyable use of your Mazda. Should you resell the vehicle, leave this manual with it for the next owner.

All specifications and descriptions are accurate at the time of printing. Because improvement is a constant goal at Mazda, we reserve the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice and without obligation.

Please be aware that this manual applies to all models, equipment and options. As a result, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.
Table Of Contents

Introduction
About This Manual ....................... page 1
Symbols Glossary .......................... page 2
Parts and Accessories ................. page 2

At a Glance
At a Glance ............................... page 3

Child Safety
Child Seats ............................... page 9
Child Seat Positioning ............... page 14
ISOFIX Anchor Points ................. page 16
Booster Seats ............................ page 17
Child Safety Locks .................... page 19

Occupant protection
Principle of Operation .................. page 20
Fastening the seat belts ............... page 29
Seat belt height adjustment ........... page 30
Seat belt reminder ....................... page 31
Using seat belts during pregnancy ........................ page 31
Disabling the passenger airbag ........................ page 32
Constant monitoring .................... page 33

Keys and Remote Controls
General Information on Radio Frequencies .................................. page 35
Programming the remote control ......................................... page 35
Changing the remote control battery ...................................... page 37

Locks
Locking and Unlocking ............... page 38

Engine immobiliser
Principle of Operation .................. page 42
Coded keys ............................... page 43
Arming the engine immobiliser .... page 43
Disarming the engine immobiliser ......................... page 44

Alarm
Principle of Operation .................. page 45
Arming the alarm ......................... page 47
Disarming the alarm ..................... page 47

Steering Wheel
Adjusting the Steering Wheel ..... page 48
Audio Control ............................ page 49
Voice Control ............................ page 49

Wipers and Washers
Windscreen Wipers ..................... page 50
Autowipers ............................... page 50
Windscreen Washers ................. page 51
Checking the Wiper Blades .......... page 52
Changing the Wiper Blades .......... page 52

Lighting
Lighting Control ........................ page 54
Autolamps ............................... page 55
Running Lamps .......................... page 56
Front Fog Lamps ......................... page 56
Rear Fog Lamps .......................... page 57
Headlamp Levelling .................... page 58
Hazard Warning Flashers ............. page 59
Direction Indicators .................... page 59
Interior Lamps ........................... page 60
Changing a Bulb ........................ page 60
Bulb Specification Chart .............. page 67

Windows and Mirrors
Power Windows .......................... page 68
Exterior Mirrors ........................ page 70
Electric exterior mirrors ............. page 71

Instrument Cluster
Gauges ..................................... page 73
Warning Lamps and Indicators .... page 74
Audible Warnings and Indicators ......................... page 81

Information Displays
General Information ..................... page 83
Trip Computer ............................ page 83
# Table Of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Personalised Settings</strong></td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Air-Conditioning</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principle of Operation</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air Vents</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual Air-Conditioning</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic Air-Conditioning</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heated Windows</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Seats</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sitting in the Correct Position</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front Seats</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head Restraints</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear Seats</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heated Seats</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Convenience features</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clock</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrument Lighting Dimmer</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cigar Lighter</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ashtray</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auxiliary Power Points</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cup Holders</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overhead Console</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage compartments</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USB port</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floor Mats</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Starting and Stopping the Engine</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Information</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ignition Switch</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering Wheel Lock</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starting a Petrol Engine</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starting a Diesel Engine</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diesel Particulate Filter</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switching Off the Engine</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fuel and Refuelling</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety Precautions</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Quality - Petrol</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Quality - Diesel</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catalytic Converter</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel filler flap</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refuelling</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Consumption</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Transmission</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual Transmission</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Four-Wheel Drive</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electronic Locking Differential</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic Transmission</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Brakes</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principle of Operation</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking Brake</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hill descent control (HDC)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principle of Operation</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Hill Descent Control</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dynamic Stability Control</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principle of Operation</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Dynamic Stability Control</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hill Launch Assist</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principle of Operation</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parking Aids</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principle of Operation</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using the Parking Aid - Vehicles With: Rear Parking Aid</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear View Camera</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cruise Control</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principle of Operation</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Cruise Control</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Load Carrying</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Information</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tailgate</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Load Retaining Fixtures</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Driving Hints</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Driving Points</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Table Of Contents

Running-In ................................. page 149  
Cold Weather Precautions ........ page 149  
Reduced Engine Performance .... page 150  
Driving Through Water .......... page 150  
Vehicle Loading ......................... page 152

## Towing

Towing a Trailer ....................... page 153

## Fuses

Fuse Box Locations ................. page 159  
Changing a Fuse ....................... page 160  
Fuse Specification Chart ......... page 161

## Vehicle recovery

Towing Points .......................... page 166  
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels ....................... page 166

## Maintenance

General Information .................. page 168  
Opening and Closing the Bonnet ..................... page 169  
Under Bonnet Overview - MZI 2.5 .................. page 171  
Under Bonnet Overview - MZ-CD 2.2 .................. page 172  
Under Bonnet Overview - MZ-CD 3.2 I5 .................. page 174  
Engine Oil Dipstick - MZI 2.5 ... page 176  
Engine Oil Dipstick - MZ-CD 2.2/MZ-CD 3.2 I5 .................. page 176  
Engine Oil Check ....................... page 177  
Engine Coolant Check ............... page 178  
Power Steering Fluid Check ...... page 179  
Brake and Clutch Fluid Check ... page 179  
Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap ....................... page 180  
Washer Fluid Check ................... page 181  
Technical Specifications .......... page 182  
Scheduled Maintenance .......... page 183

## Vehicle Care

Cleaning the Exterior .......... page 188  
Cleaning the Interior .......... page 189

Repairing Minor Paint Damage ....................... page 189

## Vehicle battery

Jump-Starting the Vehicle ........ page 190  
Battery connection points ....... page 191  
Battery warning symbols ....... page 191

## Wheels and Tyres

General Information .................. page 193  
Changing a Road Wheel ............ page 194  
Tyre Care ............................... page 202  
Using Winter Tyres ............... page 203  
Using Snow Chains ............... page 204  
Tyre pressure monitoring system ........................................ page 204  
Technical Specifications .......... page 209

## Vehicle identification

Vehicle Identification Plate ..... page 210  
Vehicle Identification Number .... page 210

## Capacities and Specific Technical Specifications .......... page 211

## Navigation introduction

General Information .................. page 217  
Road Safety ............................ page 218

## Navigation Quick start

Navigation Quick start ................ page 219

## Navigation unit overview

Navigation unit overview .......... page 221  
Loading the navigation data ...... page 224

## System settings

System settings ....................... page 225

## Navigation system

Route options menu ............... page 228  
Route displays ....................... page 229

## Traffic Message Channel

Principle of Operation ............... page 231
# Table Of Contents

- Using TMC ....................................... page 231
- Map updates .................................... page 232
- Audio introduction ............................. page 232
  - Important audio information .......... page 233
- Audio unit overview ........................... page 235
- Audio system security ........................ page 242
  - Security code ................................ page 242
- Audio unit clock and date .................... page 243
  - Setting the clock on the audio unit .......... page 243
- Audio unit operation ........................... page 245
  - On/off control ................................ page 245
  - Sound button ................................ page 245
  - Waveband button ............................ page 246
  - Station tuning control .................... page 246
  - Station preset buttons .................... page 247
  - Autostore control ........................... page 248
  - Traffic information control .......... page 248
- Audio unit menus ................................ page 250
  - Automatic volume control ............... page 250
  - Digital signal processing (DSP) .......... page 250
  - News broadcasts ............................ page 251
  - Alternative frequencies ................ page 251
  - Regional mode (REG) ..................... page 252
- Compact disc player ............................ page 253
  - Compact disc playback ....................... page 253
  - Track selection .............................. page 253
  - Fast forward/reverse ....................... page 254
  - Shuffle/random .............................. page 254
  - Repeat compact disc tracks .......... page 255
  - Compact disc track scanning .......... page 255
  - MP3 file playback .......................... page 256
  - MP3 display options ...................... page 259
  - Ending compact disc playback .......... page 259
- Auxiliary input (AUX IN) ........................... page 260
  - Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket .......... page 260
- Audio system care .............................. page 260
  - Aerial ........................................ page 261
- Audio troubleshooting .......................... page 262
  - Audio troubleshooting .................... page 262
- Telephone ....................................... page 263
  - General Information ....................... page 263
  - Telephone setup ............................. page 263
  - Bluetooth® setup ........................... page 264
  - Telephone controls ....................... page 265
  - Using the telephone ...................... page 266
- Voice control .................................... page 269
  - Principle of Operation ..................... page 269
  - Using voice control ....................... page 270
  - Audio unit commands ..................... page 271
  - Telephone commands ..................... page 280
  - Air-conditioning commands .......... page 282
- Connectivity .................................... page 284
  - General Information ....................... page 284
  - Connecting an external device ........ page 286
  - Connecting an external device - Vehicles page 286
  - With: Bluetooth® ......................... page 286
  - Using a USB device ....................... page 287
  - Using an iPod ............................... page 290
- Appendices ...................................... page 293
  - Type approvals ............................. page 293
  - Type approvals ............................. page 293
  - Type approvals ............................. page 294
  - Electromagnetic compatibility .... page 295
ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Mazda. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about it, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

⚠️ WARNING

Always drive with due care and attention when using and operating the controls and features on your vehicle.

NOTE

- This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to your vehicle.
- Some of the illustrations in this manual may be used for different models, so may appear different to your vehicle. However, the essential information in the illustrations is always correct.
- Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.
- Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of the vehicle.

This vehicle has received the endorsement of TÜV, the accredited international testing organisation, for its allergy-friendly properties.

All materials used in the manufacture of the interior of this vehicle meet strict requirements of the TÜV TOXPROOF Criteria Catalogue for Vehicle Interiors by TÜV Produkt and Umwelt GmbH and are designed to minimize the risk of allergic reactions.

Additionally an efficient pollen filter protects the passengers against allergen particles in the outdoor air.

For more information, contact TÜV at www.tuv.com.
Introduction

SYMBOLS GLOSSARY
Symbols in this handbook

⚠️ WARNING
You risk death or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instructions highlighted by the warning symbol.

⚠️ CAUTION
You risk damaging your vehicle if you do not follow the instructions highlighted by the caution symbol.

Symbols on your vehicle

⚠️

북

When you see these symbols, read and follow the relevant instructions in this handbook before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.

PARTS AND ACCESSORIES
Genuine Mazda parts and accessories have been designed specifically for your vehicle. Unless we have specifically stated, we have not tested non-Mazda parts and accessories and, therefore, we will not guarantee that they are suitable for your vehicle. We recommend that you ask your Authorised Mazda Repairer for advice on parts and accessories suitable for your vehicle.
The equipment and installation position varies by vehicle
At a Glance

Instrument panel overview - Left-hand drive

The equipment and installation position varies by vehicle

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Door lock button. See <em>Locking and Unlocking</em> (page 38).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Audio unit. See <em>Audio unit overview</em> (page 235).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Multi-functional display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Multi-function lever: Direction indicators. See <em>Direction Indicators</em> (page 59). High Beam. See <em>Lighting Control</em> (page 54).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Audio control. See <em>Audio Control</em> (page 49).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Instrument cluster. See <em>Gauges</em> (page 73). See <em>Warning Lamps and Indicators</em> (page 74).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>Multi-function lever: Direction indicators. See <em>Direction Indicators</em> (page 59). High Beam. See <em>Lighting Control</em> (page 54).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Headlamp levelling switch. See <em>Headlamp Levelling</em> (page 58).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Air vents. See <em>Air Vents</em> (page 89).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>Bonnet release lever. See <em>Opening and Closing the Bonnet</em> (page 169).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>Driver side storage compartment. See <em>Storage compartments</em> (page 110).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>Cruise control. See <em>Cruise Control</em> (page 143).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Ignition switch. See <em>Ignition Switch</em> (page 113).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>Horn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>Dynamic stability control (DSC) off switch. See <em>Using Dynamic Stability Control</em> (page 135).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>Passenger airbag deactivation warning lamp. See <em>Disabling the passenger airbag</em> (page 32).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>Auxiliary power sockets. See <em>Auxiliary Power Points</em> (page 108).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
At a Glance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>Auxiliary input and USB. See Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket (page 111). See USB port (page 260).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>Hazard warning flasher switch. See Hazard Warning Flashers (page 59).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>Electronic Locking Differential (ELD) button. See Electronic Locking Differential (page 125).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>Hill descent control on switch. See Hill descent control (HDC) (page 132).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Some models.

▼ Locking and unlocking

Unlocking the vehicle

![Unlocking the vehicle](image1)

- **A** Key fold/unfold button
- **B** Unlock
- **C** Lock

Press the unlock button once to unlock the vehicle.
Press the lock button once to activate central locking.
Press the lock button twice within three seconds to double lock the doors.

▼ Adjusting the steering wheel

![Adjusting the steering wheel](image2)

**WARNING**

Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving.

**WARNING**

Make sure that you fully engage the locking lever when returning it to its original position.
At a Glance

Recommended settings for heating

Select the outside air.
Close the centre air vents and open the side air vents.
Direct the side air vents toward the side windows.

▼ Manual air-conditioning

Recommended settings for cooling

Select the outside air.
Open the centre and side air vents.
Direct the centre air vents upwards and the side air vents toward the side windows.

Automatic air-conditioning

Recommended settings for cooling

Select the outside air.
Set the temperature to 22 °C (72 °F).
Open the centre and side air vents.
Direct the centre air vents upwards and the side air vents toward the side windows.
Recommended settings for heating

Select the outside air.
Set the temperature to 22 °C (72 °F).
Open the centre and side air vents.
Direct the centre air vents upwards and the side air vents toward the side windows.

Direction indicators

If the lever is tapped up or down, the direction indicators will flash three times.
See Direction Indicators (page 59).

AIRBAG

WARNING

To avoid the risk of death or serious injury, never use a rearward facing child restraint in the front, unless the air bag is OFF.

See Child Seat Positioning (page 14).
At a Glance

▼ Manual transmission
Selecting reverse gear - 6 speed

It is necessary to raise the collar whilst selecting reverse gear in 6-speed vehicles. See Manual Transmission (page 123).

▼ Refuelling

⚠️ WARNING
Take care when refuelling to avoid spilling any residual fuel from the fuel pipe nozzle.

Slightly raise the fuel nozzle to remove it. See Fuel filler flap (page 120).
Mazda strongly urges the use of child-restraint systems for children small enough to use them.

Mazda recommends use of a Mazda genuine child-restraint system or one that complies with the UNECE *144 regulation. If you would like to purchase a Mazda genuine child-restraint system, please contact an Authorised Mazda Repairer. Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding the safety of children riding in your vehicle.

*1 UNECE stands for United Nations Economic Commission for Europe.

Whatever child-restraint system you consider, please pick the appropriate one for the age and size of the child, obey the law and follow the instructions that come with the individual child-restraint system.

A child who has outgrown child-restraint systems should sit in the rear and use seat belts.

The child-restraint system should be installed on the rear seat. Statistics confirm that the rear seat is the best place for all children up to 12 years of age—more so with a supplementary restraint system (air bags).

A rear-facing child-restraint system should **NEVER** be used in the front passenger seat with the air bag system activated. The front passenger's seat is also the least preferred seat for other child-restraint systems.

For some models, we have provided a deactivation switch that will disable front passenger air bag inflation. Do not switch off the front passenger air bag without reading the “Disabling the Passenger Airbag”. See **Disabling the Passenger Airbag** (page 32).
Child Safety

⚠️ WARNING

Use the correct size child-restraint system:
For effective protection in vehicle accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained using a seat belt or child-restraint system depending on age and size. If not, the child could be seriously injured or even killed in an accident.

Follow the manufacturer’s instructions and always keep the child-restraint system buckled down:
An unsecured child-restraint system is dangerous. In a sudden stop or a collision it could move causing serious injury or death to the child or other occupants. Make sure any child-restraint system is properly secured in place according to the child-restraint system manufacturer’s instructions. When not in use, remove it from the vehicle or fasten it with a seat belt, or latch it down to BOTH ISOFIX anchors, and attach the corresponding tether anchor.

Always secure a child in a proper child-restraint system:
Holding a child in your arms while the vehicle is moving is extremely dangerous. No matter how strong the person may be, he or she cannot hold onto a child in a sudden stop or collision and it could result in serious injury or death to the child or other occupants. Even in a moderate accident, the child may be exposed to air bag forces that could result in serious injury or death to the child, or the child may be slammed into an adult, causing injury to both child and adult.
**WARNING**

*Extreme Hazard! Never use a rear-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat with an air bag that could deploy:*

*Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!*

*Even in a moderate collision, the child-restraint system can be hit by a deploying air bag and moved violently backward resulting in serious injury or death to the child. If your vehicle is equipped with a front passenger air bag deactivation switch, always set the switch to the OFF position when installing a rear-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat.*

*Vehicles with a front passenger air bag have a warning label attached as shown below. The warning label reminds you not to put a rear-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat at any time.*
Child Safety

⚠️ WARNING

Do not install a front-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat unless it is unavoidable:
In a collision, the force of a deploying air bag could cause serious injury or death to the child. If installing a front-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat is unavoidable, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and make sure that the front passenger air bag deactivation switch is in the OFF position. See Disabling the Passenger Airbag (page 32).

Do not allow a child or anyone to lean over or against the side window of a vehicle with side and curtain air bags:
It is dangerous to allow anyone to lean over or against the side window, the area of the front passenger seat, the front and rear window pillars and the roof edge along both sides from which the side and curtain air bags deploy, even if a child-restraint system is used. The impact of inflation from a side or curtain air bag could cause serious injury or death to an out of position child. Furthermore, leaning over or against the front door could block the side and curtain air bags and eliminate the advantages of supplementary protection. With the front air bag and the additional side air bag that comes out of the front seat, the rear seat is always a better location for children. Take special care not to allow a child to lean over or against the side window, even if the child is seated in a child-restraint system.

Use the tether and tether anchor only for a child-restraint system:
Child-restraint system anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly installed child-restraint systems. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Always route the tether strap between the head restraint and the seatback:
Routing the tether strap on top of the head restraint is dangerous. In a collision the tether strap could slide off the head restraint and loosen the child-restraint system. The child-restraint system could move which may result in death or injury to the child.
Child Safety

⚠️ WARNING

*Always attach the tether strap to the correct tether anchor position:*
*Attaching the tether strap to the incorrect tether anchor position is dangerous. In a collision, the tether strap could come off and loosen the child-restraint system. If the child-restraint system moves it could result in death or injury to the child.*

⚠️ CAUTION

*A seat belt or child-restraint system can become very hot in a closed vehicle during warm weather. To avoid burning yourself or a child, check them before you or your child touches them.*
Child Safety

**CHILD SEAT POSITIONING**

⚠️ **WARNING**

- Please consult your Repairer for the latest details relating to Mazda recommended child seats.
- Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it!
- When using a child seat with a support leg, the support leg must rest securely on the floor.
- When using a child seat with a seatbelt, make sure that the seat belt is not slack or twisted.

⚠️ **CAUTION**

The child seat must rest tightly against the vehicle seat. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. However, when installing a booster cushion, always install the vehicle head restraint to the seat where the booster cushion is installed. See **Head Restraints** (page 103).

**NOTE**

When using a child seat on a front seat, always adjust the front passenger seat to its fully rearwards position. If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seatbelt without slack remaining, adjust the seatback to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat. See **Seats** (page 97).
## Child Safety

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Seating positions</th>
<th>Mass group categories</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Up to 10 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front outboard passenger seat with airbag ON</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front outboard passenger seat with airbag OFF</td>
<td>U¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear seats</td>
<td>U</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regular cab centre seat</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

X Not suitable for children in this mass group.
U Suitable for universal category child seats approved for use in this mass group.
U¹ Suitable for universal category child seats approved for use in this mass group. However, we recommend that you secure children in a government approved child seat, in the rear seat.
UF¹ Suitable for universal category forward facing child seats approved for use in this mass group. However, we recommend that you secure children in a government approved child seat, in the rear seat.

### ISOFIX child seats * - Double cab

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Seating positions</th>
<th>Mass group categories</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rear facing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Up to 13 kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front seat</td>
<td>Size class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear outboard seat ISOFIX</td>
<td>Size class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear centre seat</td>
<td>Size class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IL. Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraints systems of the **semi-universal** category. Please consult child restraints systems suppliers' vehicle recommendation lists.
IUF Suitable for ISOFIX forward facing child restraints systems of **universal** category approved for use in this mass group and ISOFIX size class.
* The ISOFIX size class for both universal and semi-universal child restraints systems is defined by the capital letters A to G. These identification letters are displayed on ISOFIX child restraints.
** At time of publishing the recommended Group O+ ISOFIX baby safety seat is the Britax Roemer Baby Safe. Please consult your Repairer for the latest details relating to Mazda recommended child seats.
*** At time of publishing the recommended Group 1 ISOFIX child seat is the Britax Roemer Safefix PLUS. Please consult your Repairer for the latest details relating to Mazda recommended child seats.

*Some models.*
Child Safety

ISOFIX ANCHOR POINTS *

⚠️ WARNING

Use an anti-rotation device when using the ISOFIX system. We recommend that you use a top tether or a support leg.

NOTE

When you are purchasing an ISOFIX restraint, make sure that you know the correct mass group and ISOFIX size class for the intended seating locations. See Child Seat Positioning (page 14).

Your vehicle is fitted with ISOFIX anchor points that accommodate universally approved ISOFIX child restraints. The ISOFIX system comprises two rigid attachment arms on the child restraint that attach to anchor points on the 2nd row seats, where the cushion and backrest meet. Tether anchor points are fitted to the back panel trim for child restraints with a top tether.

▼ Attaching a child restraint with a top tether

⚠️ WARNING

Do not attach a tether strap to anything other than the correct tether anchor point.

Double cab

1. Remove the head restraint. However, when installing a booster cushion, always install the vehicle head restraint to the seat where the booster cushion is installed. See Head Restraints (page 103).

2. Place the child seat on the back seat cushion and fold the relevant seatback forward. See Rear Seats (page 104).

* Some models.
3. Route the tether strap to the anchor point.

**WARNING**

Make sure the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.

4. Push the seatback to the upright position.

**WARNING**

- Make sure that the seatback is secure and fully engaged in the catch.
- Make sure the safety seat is fitted correctly. There is a risk of injury.

5. Push the child seat back firmly to engage the ISOFIX lower anchor points.

6. Tighten the tether strap in line with the child seat manufacturers instructions.

We recommend that you use a tether strap where fitted.

**BOOSTER SEATS**

**WARNING**

- Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the seat belt.
- Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a seat belt that is slack or twisted.
- Do not put the seat belt under your child's arm or behind its back.
- Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height.
- Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.
- Secure children that weigh more than 15 kilograms (33 pounds) but are less than 150 centimetres (59 inches) tall in a booster seat or a booster cushion.

**CAUTION**

When using a child seat on a rear seat, make sure that the child seat rests tightly against the vehicle seat. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. However, when installing a booster cushion, always install the vehicle head restraint to the seat where the booster cushion is installed. See Head Restraints (page 103).
Child Safety

Booster seat (Group 2)

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seat belt over the centre of your child’s shoulder and the lap strap tightly across its hips.

Booster cushion (Group 3)

When using a booster cushion, always install the vehicle head restraint to the seat where the booster cushion is installed.
**WARNING**

*You cannot open the doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.*

**Left-hand side**
Turn anti-clockwise to lock and clockwise to unlock.

**Right-hand side**
Turn clockwise to lock and anti-clockwise to unlock.


**Occupant protection**

**PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION**

### Supplementary Restraint Systems (SRS) Precautions

These systems operate independently depending on the type of accident encountered; if you have side and curtain air bags, the side and curtain air bags are not likely to deploy on both sides in the same accident because a vehicle is not often hit from both sides. The side and curtain air bags and the frontal air bag system will not normally deploy during the same type of accident unless a combination of frontal and side impacts occur.

The air bag supplementary restraint systems are designed to provide supplementary protection only in the front seats in certain situations and the rear outside passenger positions only in same-side collisions, so seat belts are always important in the following ways:

Without seat belt usage, the air bags cannot provide adequate protection during an accident. Seat belt usage is necessary to:

- Keep the occupant from being thrown into an inflating air bag.
- Reduce the possibility of injuries during an accident that is not designed for air bag inflation, such as roll-over or rear impact.
- Reduce the possibility of injuries in frontal or side collisions that are not severe enough to activate the air bags.
- Reduce the possibility of being thrown from your vehicle.

- Reduce the possibility of injuries to lower body and legs during an accident because the air bags provide no protection to these parts of the body.
- Hold the driver in a position which allows better control of the vehicle.

A child who is too small to use a seat belt must be properly secured using a child-restraint system. See **Child Restraint Precautions** (page 9).

Carefully consider which child-restraint system is necessary for your child and follow the installation directions in this Owner's Manual as well as the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

---

**WARNING**

*Seat belts must be worn in air bag equipped vehicles:*

*Depending only on the air bags for protection during an accident is dangerous. Alone, air bags may not prevent serious injuries. The appropriate air bags can be expected to inflate only in the first collision with frontal, near frontal or side forces that are at least moderate. Vehicle occupants should always wear seat belts.*
Occupant Protection

⚠️ WARNING

Children should not ride in the front passenger seat:
Placing a child, 12 years or under, in the front seat is dangerous. The child could be hit by a deploying air bag and be seriously injured or even killed. A sleeping child is more likely to lean against the door and be hit by the side air bag in moderate, right-side collision. Whenever possible, always secure a child 12 years and under on the rear seats with an appropriate child-restraint system for the child's age and size.

Extreme Hazard! Never use a rear-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat with an air bag that could deploy:
Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!
Even in a moderate collision, the child-restraint system can be hit by a deploying air bag and moved violently backward resulting in serious injury or death to the child. If your vehicle is equipped with a front passenger air bag deactivation switch, always set the switch to the OFF position when installing a rear-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat.

⚠️ WARNING

Do not sit too close to the driver and front passenger air bags:
Sitting too close to the driver and front passenger air bag modules or placing hands or feet on them is extremely dangerous. The driver and front passenger air bags inflate with great force and speed. Serious injuries could occur if someone is too close. The driver should always hold onto only the rim of the steering wheel. The front seat passenger should keep both feet on the floor. Front seat occupants should adjust their seats as far back as possible and always sit upright against the seatbacks with seat belts worn properly.

Sit in the centre of the seat and wear seat belts properly:
Sitting too close to the side air bag modules or placing hands on them is extremely dangerous. The side air bags inflate with great force and speed directly out of the outboard side of the front seat and expand along the front door on the side the car is hit. Serious injury could occur if someone is sitting too close to the door or leaning against a window, or if rear seat occupants grab the sides of the front seatbacks. Furthermore, sleeping up against the door or hanging out the windows in the vehicle could block the side and curtain air bags and eliminate the advantages of supplementary protection. Give the side and curtain air bags room to work by sitting in the centre of the seat while the vehicle is moving with seat belts worn properly.
Occupant protection

⚠️ WARNING

Do not attach objects on or around the area where driver and front passenger air bags deploy:
Attaching an object to the driver and front passenger air bag modules or placing something in front of them is dangerous. In an accident, an object could interfere with air bag inflation and injure the occupants.

Do not attach objects on or around the area where a side air bag deploys:
Attaching articles to the front seat in such a way as to cover the outboard side of the seat in any way is dangerous. In an accident the object could interfere with the side air bag, which inflates from the outboard side of the front seats, impeding the added protection of the side air bag system or redirecting the air bag in a way that is dangerous. Furthermore, the bag could be cut open releasing the gas.
Do not hang net bags, map pouches or backpacks with side straps on the front seats. Never use seat covers on the front seats. Always keep the side air bag modules in your front seats free to deploy in the event of a side collision.

⚠️ WARNING

Do not attach objects on or around the area where a curtain air bag deploys:
Attaching objects to the areas where the curtain air bag activates such as on the windscreen glass, side door glass, front and rear window pillars and along the roof edge and assist grips is dangerous. In an accident the object could interfere with the curtain air bag, which inflates from the front and rear window pillars and along the roof edge, impeding the added protection of the curtain air bag system or redirecting the air bag in a way that is dangerous. Furthermore, the bag could be cut open releasing the gas.
Do not place hangers or any other objects on the assist grips. When hanging clothes, hang them on the coat hook directly. Always keep the curtain air bag modules free to deploy in the event of a side collision.

Do not touch the components of the supplementary restraint system after the air bags have inflated:
Touching the components of the supplementary restraint system after the air bags have inflated is dangerous. Immediately after inflation, they are very hot. You could get burned.
**WARNING**

Never install any front-end equipment to your vehicle:
Installation of front-end equipment, such as frontal protection bar (kangaroo bar, bull bar, push bar, or other similar devices), snowplow, or winches, is dangerous. The air bag crash sensor system could be affected. This could cause air bags to inflate unexpectedly, or it could prevent the air bags from inflating during an accident. Front occupants could be seriously injured.

Do not modify the suspension:
Modifying the vehicle suspension is dangerous. If the vehicle's height or the suspension is modified, the vehicle will be unable to accurately detect a collision resulting in incorrect or unexpected air bag deployment and the possibility of serious injuries.

**WARNING**

Do not modify the supplementary restraint system:
Modifying the components or wiring of the supplementary restraint system is dangerous. You could accidentally activate it or make it inoperable. Do not make any modifications to the supplementary restraint system. This includes installing trim, badges, or anything else over the air bag modules. It also includes installing extra electrical equipment on or near system components or wiring. An expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer can provide the special care needed in the removal and installation of front seats. It is important to protect the side and curtain air bag wiring and connections to assure that the bags do not accidentally deploy and that the seats retain an undamaged air bag connection.

Do not place luggage or other objects under the front seats:
Placing luggage or other objects under the front seats is dangerous. The components essential to the supplementary restraint system could be damaged, and in the event of a side collision, the appropriate air bags may not deploy, which could result in death or serious injury. To prevent damage to the components essential to the supplementary restraint system, do not place luggage or other objects under the front seats.


Occupant protection

**NOTE**

- When an air bag deploys, a loud inflation noise can be heard and some smoke will be released. Neither is likely to cause injury, however, the texture of the air bags may cause light skin injuries on body parts not covered with clothing through friction.

- Should you sell your Mazda, we urge you to tell the new owner of its air bag systems and that familiarization with all instructions about them, from the Owner's Manual, is important.

- This highly-visible label warns against the use of rear-facing child-restraint systems in the front seat.

**Seat Belt Precautions**

Seat belts help to decrease the possibility of severe injury during accidents and sudden stops. Mazda recommends that the driver and all passengers always wear seat belts.

**With 3-point type seat belt for the rear centre seat**

All the seats have lap/shoulder belts. These belts have retractors with inertia locks that keep them out of the way when not in use. The locks allow the belts to remain comfortable on users, but they'll lock in position during a collision.

**With 2-point type seat belt for the rear centre seat**

The front and rear outboard seats have lap/shoulder belts. These belts have retractors with inertia locks that keep them out of the way when not in use. The locks allow the belts to remain comfortable on users, but they'll lock in position during a collision. The centre-rear seat has a lap belt with manual adjustment.

In some models (with automatic locking mode), the rear outboard seat belt retractors operate in two modes, emergency locking mode and, for child-restraint systems, automatic locking mode.
Always wear your seat belt and make sure all occupants are properly restrained:
Not wearing a seat belt is extremely dangerous. During a collision, occupants not wearing seat belts could hit someone or things inside the vehicle or even be thrown out of the vehicle. They could be seriously injured or even killed. In the same collision, occupants wearing seat belts would be much safer.

Do not wear twisted seat belts:
Twisted seat belts are dangerous. In a collision, the full width of the belt is not available to absorb the impact. This puts more force on the bones beneath the belt, which could cause serious injury or death. So, if your seat belt is twisted, you must straighten the seat belt to remove any twists and to allow the full width of the belt to be used.

Never use one seat belt on more than one person at a time:
Using one seat belt for more than one person at a time is dangerous. A seat belt used in this way cannot spread the impact forces properly and the two passengers could be crushed together and seriously injured or even killed. Never use one belt for more than one person at a time and always operate the vehicle with each occupant properly restrained.

Do not operate a vehicle with a damaged seat belt:
Using a damaged seat belt is dangerous. An accident could damage the belt webbing of the seat belt in use. A damaged seat belt cannot provide adequate protection in a collision. Have an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer inspect all seat belt systems in use during an accident before they are used again.

Positioning the Shoulder Portion of the Seat Belt:
Improper positioning of the shoulder portion of the seat belt is dangerous. Always make sure the shoulder portion of the seat belt is positioned across your shoulder and near your neck, but never under your arm, on your neck, or on your upper arm.

Positioning the Lap Portion of the Seat Belt:
The lap portion of the seat belt worn too high is dangerous. In a collision, this would concentrate the impact force directly on the abdominal area, causing serious injury. Wear the lap portion of the belt snugly and as low as possible.
Occupant protection

⚠️ WARNING

Instructions for Use of Seat Belt Assemblies:
- Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis, or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.
- Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.
- Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated, or damaged.
- It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.
- Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.
- Each seat belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant’s lap.

⚠️ WARNING

- No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

⚠️ CAUTION

Belt retraction may become difficult if the belts and rings are soiled, so try to keep them clean. For more details about cleaning the seat belts.
Airbags

⚠️ WARNING

- Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags.
- Original text according to the UNECE *1 94.01 regulation: Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!
  
*1 UNECE stands for United Nations Economic Commission for Europe
- Wear a seat belt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seat belt properly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. See Sitting in the Correct Position (page 97).
- Have repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seat belts carried out by a properly trained technician.
- Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers.
- Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags.
- Use seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by a properly trained technician.

NOTE

- You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.
- Only wipe airbag covers with a damp cloth.

Driver and front passenger airbags

The driver and front passenger airbags will deploy during significant frontal collisions or collisions that are up to 30 degrees from the left or the right. The airbags will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupants, thus cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal collisions, overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the driver and front passenger airbags will not deploy.
Side airbags

Side airbags are fitted inside the seatback of the front seats. A label indicates that side airbags are fitted to your vehicle. The side airbags will deploy during significant lateral collisions. The airbags will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupants, thus providing protection for the chest and shoulder areas. During minor lateral collisions, overturns, front collisions and rear collisions, the side airbags will not deploy.

Curtain airbags

Curtain airbags are fitted inside the trim panels over the front and rear side windows. Moulded badges in the B-pillar trim panels indicate that curtain airbags are fitted to your vehicle. The curtain airbags will deploy during significant lateral collisions. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupants, thus providing protection for the head. During minor lateral collisions, front collisions, rear collisions, or overturns the curtain airbags will not deploy.

Seat belts

**WARNING**

- Wear a seat belt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seat belt properly, can it hold you in a position to achieve its optimum effect. See Sitting in the Correct Position (page 97).
- Never use a seat belt for more than one person.
- Use the correct buckle for each seat belt.
- Do not use a seat belt that is slack or twisted.
- Do not wear thick clothing. The seatbelt must fit tightly around your body to achieve its optimum effect.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seat belt over the centre of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.
The driver and front passenger seat belt retractors are fitted with a seat belt pretensioner. Seat belt pretensioners have a lower deployment threshold than the airbags. During minor collisions, it is possible that only the seat belt pretensioners will deploy.

**Status after a collision**

![Image of seat belts](E74124)

**WARNING**

Seat belts subjected to strain, as a result of an accident, should be renewed and the anchorages checked by a properly trained technician.

![Image of seat belts](E85817)
Occupant protection

Pull the belt out steadily. It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope. Press the red button on the buckle to release the belt. Let it retract completely and smoothly.

To raise or lower, pull the locking button on the adjuster and move as necessary.

*Some models.
**SEAT BELT REMINDER**

⚠️ **WARNING**

*The occupant protection system will only provide optimum protection when you use the seat belt properly.*

**Type 1:** The seat belt warning lamp will be illuminated for 6 seconds when the ignition is turned on to remind the driver to fasten the seatbelt.

**Type 2:** The seat belt reminder warning lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound if the driver or front passenger seat belt has not been fastened and the vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed. It will also illuminate if either of the seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is moving. The audible warning will go off after five minutes but the seat belt reminder warning lamp will remain on until the seat belt is fastened.

---

**USING SEAT BELTS DURING PREGNANCY**

⚠️ **WARNING**

*Position the seat belt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.*

Position the lap strap comfortably across your hips and low beneath your pregnant abdomen. Position the shoulder strap between your breasts, above and to the side of your pregnant abdomen.

---

*Some models.*
Occupant protection

**DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG**

⚠️ **WARNING**

*Make sure that the passenger airbag is disabled when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front passenger seat.*

If the airbag warning lamp illuminates or flashes when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Remove the child restraint and have the system checked immediately.

▶ **Disabling the passenger airbag**

![Passenger Airbag Deactivation Switch Diagram]

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Turn the switch to position A.

▶ **Fitting the passenger airbag deactivation switch**

⚠️ **WARNING**

*If you need to fit a child restraint on a seat protected by an operational airbag in front of it, have a passenger airbag deactivation switch fitted. Ask your dealer for further information.*

**NOTE**

The key switch is located in the glove compartment with an airbag deactivation lamp in the instrument panel.

*Some models.*
Occupant protection

▼ Enabling the passenger airbag

⚠️ WARNING

Make sure that the passenger airbag is enabled when you are not using a child restraint on the front passenger seat.

Turn the switch to position B.

When you switch the ignition on, the passenger airbag ON warning lamp illuminates indicating that the passenger airbag is enabled. For item location: See At a Glance (page 3).

CONSTANT MONITORING

The following components of the air bag systems are monitored by a diagnostic system:

- Crash sensors, and diagnostic module (SAS unit)
- Front air bag sensors
- Air bag modules
- Side crash sensors
- Air bag/Seat belt pretensioner system warning light
- Seat belt pretensioners
- Related wiring

The diagnostic module continuously monitors the system’s readiness. This begins when the ignition is switched ON and continues while the vehicle is being driven.
**GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES**

**CAUTION**
- The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other short distance radio transmissions (e.g. amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems). If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.
- Check your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended. This will safeguard against any potential malicious frequency blocking.

**NOTE**
You could unlock the doors if you press the buttons on the remote control unintentionally.

The operating range between your remote control and your vehicle varies depending on the environment.

**PROGRAMMING THE REMOTE CONTROL**

**NOTE**
Additional remote controls can be programmed only if the vehicle is supplied with at least one remote control.

A maximum of eight remote controls (including the one supplied with your vehicle) can be programmed. The remote controls must remain inside the vehicle during the programming procedure. Fasten the front seat belts and close all doors to ensure that conflicting chimes do not sound during programming.

**Programming a new remote control**

1. To programme new remote controls turn the ignition key to position II four times within six seconds.
2. Turn the ignition to position 0. A tone sounds to indicate that it is now possible to programme the remote controls for ten seconds.
3. Press any button on a new remote control. A tone will sound as confirmation.
4. Repeat this last step for all your remote controls, including your original. Do not remove the key from the ignition when pressing the button on this remote control.
Keys and Remote Controls

5. Switch the ignition back on (position II) or wait for ten seconds without programming another remote control to end the key programming. Only the remote controls which you have just programmed are now able to lock and unlock the vehicle.

▼ Reprogramming the unlocking function

**NOTE**

When you press the unlock button either all the doors are unlocked or only the driver's door is unlocked. Pressing the unlock button again unlocks all the doors.

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the transmitter simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators will flash twice to confirm the change. To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

▼ Programming the additional key

**NOTE**

The additional keys can be programmed only if you already have two programmed keys.

1. Insert the first key and switch on the ignition.
2. Remove the key within 10 seconds.
3. Insert the second key within 10 seconds and switch on the ignition.
4. Remove the key within 10 seconds.

5. Insert the additional key within 10 seconds which need to be programmed.
Keys and Remote Controls

CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority regarding recycling.

1. Insert a screwdriver in the position shown and gently push the clip.

2. Press the clip down to release the battery cover.

3. Carefully remove the cover.

4. Turn the remote control over to remove the battery.

5. Install a new battery (3V CR 2032) with the + facing upwards.

6. Replace the battery cover.
Locks

LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

NOTE
Do not leave your keys in the vehicle.

▼ Locking and unlocking the doors with the key

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Unlock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Lock</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE
To double lock the doors, turn the key to the lock position twice within three seconds.

▼ Locking and unlocking the doors with the remote control

Automatic relocking: The doors will relock automatically if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The door locks and the alarm will return to their previous state.

A Key fold/unfold button
B Unlock
C Lock

Press the button B once to unlock the vehicle.
Press the button C once to activate central locking.

NOTE
Central locking is activated only when all the passenger doors are closed.

Press the button C twice within four seconds to double lock the doors.*

* Some models.
**NOTE**

Double locking is activated only when all the passenger doors are closed and the bonnet is closed in the vehicle fitted with alarm.

---

**WARNING**

*Do not activate double locking when persons or animals are inside the vehicle. You will not be able to unlock the doors from inside if you have double locked them.*

---

**NOTE**

If the ignition is switched on with the double locking function activated, the lock will automatically return to single lock stage.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside.

---

**NOTE**

- The driver's door can be unlocked with the key. This needs to be used if the remote control is not functioning.
- If the vehicle remains locked for several weeks, the remote control will be disabled. The vehicle must be unlocked and the engine started using the key. Unlocking and starting the vehicle once will enable the remote control.

---

**Reprogramming the unlocking function**

The unlocking function may be reprogrammed so that only the driver's door is unlocked. See **Programming the remote control** (page 35).

---

**Locking and unlocking confirmation**

**NOTE**

- When you lock the doors, the direction indicators will flash once.
- When you double lock the doors, the direction indicators will flash twice.
- When you unlock the doors the direction indicators will flash one long flash.

---

**▼ Child play protection function**

If the remote control buttons are pressed continuously several times, the locking and unlocking function will be blocked for awhile to avoid door latches from overheating.

---

**▼ Locking and unlocking the doors from inside**

Press the button. For item location. See **At a Glance** (page 3).
Locks

▼Driver configuration mode

**NOTE**

This operation has to be done within **30 seconds**.

1. Switch the ignition ON.
2. Press door lock button three times.
3. Switch the ignition OFF.
4. Press door lock button three times.
5. Switch the ignition ON.
6. Press door lock button two times.

The system will chirp to indicate that the driver configuration mode is enabled. Once in driver configuration mode, follow the steps mentioned below to toggle the status of the automatic locking by speed or automatic unlocking.

**Automatic locking by speed**

**NOTE**

Automatic locking by speed is default disabled.

Press the central lock or unlock button twice within three seconds and wait for three seconds to toggle the automatic locking by speed function. The system will chirp when toggling.

**Automatic unlocking**

**NOTE**

Automatic unlock is default enabled.

Press the central lock or unlock button three times within three seconds and wait for three seconds to toggle the automatic unlocking function.

If the automatic unlocking function is enabled:

- All doors will be unlocked while opening the driver door or front passenger door (vehicles not delivered with remote control) from inside, with the key in ignition.

If the automatic unlocking function is disabled:

- Only the respective door will be unlocked while opening from inside.

**NOTE**

Opening the rear doors will never unlock the other doors, when opened from inside.

▼Locking the doors individually with the key

**NOTE**

If the central locking function fails to operate, the doors can be individually locked using the key in the position shown.
Locks

Left-hand side
Turn clockwise to lock.

Right-hand side
Turn anti-clockwise to lock.

Unlocking

**NOTE**
- If the child safety locks have also been activated, pulling the internal lever will only deactivate the emergency locking and not the child safety lock. The doors can only be opened using the external door handle.
- If the doors have been unlocked, they have to be locked individually using this method until the central locking function has been repaired. Unlock the driver's door using the key. The other doors can be unlocked individually by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.
Engine immobiliser

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The engine immobiliser is a theft protection system that prevents someone from starting the engine with an incorrectly coded key.

⚠️ CAUTION

- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

- To avoid damage to the key, do not:
  - Drop the key.
  - Get the key wet.
  - Expose the key to any kind of magnetic field.
  - Expose the key to high temperatures on places such as the instrument panel or bonnet, under direct sunlight.

- If the engine does not start with the correct key, and the security indicator light keeps illuminating or flashing, the system may have a malfunction. Consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

Modification and Add-On Equipment

Mazda cannot guarantee the immobilizer system's operation if the system has been modified or if any add-on equipment has been installed.
**CODED KEYS**

**NOTE**

- Do not shield your keys with metal objects. This may prevent the receiver from recognising your key as a valid one.
- Have all of your remaining keys erased and recoded if you lose a key. Ask your repairer for further information. Have replacement keys recoded together with your existing keys.

If you lose a key, you can obtain a replacement from your Authorised Mazda Repairer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original keys. You can also obtain additional keys from your Authorised Mazda Repairer.

**ARMING THE ENGINE IMMOBILISER**

The engine immobiliser is armed automatically a short time after you have switched the ignition off. The indicator in the instrument cluster will flash to confirm that the system is operating.
**Engine immobiliser**

DISARMING THE ENGINE IMMOBILISER

The engine immobiliser is disarmed automatically when you switch the ignition on with a correctly coded key. The indicator in the instrument cluster will come on for approximately three seconds and then go out. If the indicator stays on for one minute or flashes for approximately one minute and then repeatedly at irregular intervals, your key has not been recognised. Remove the key and try again.

If you are unable to start the engine with a correctly coded key, this indicates a malfunction. Have the immobiliser checked immediately.
PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Your vehicle may have one of the following alarm systems:

- Perimeter alarm with interior sensors.
- Perimeter alarm with interior sensors and battery back-up sounder.

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorised access to your vehicle through the doors and the bonnet.

Interior sensors

Arming the alarm will activate the interior sensors. See Arming the alarm (page 47).

WARNING

- Do not cover up the interior lamp unit sensors.
- Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.
- Do not leave the rear seat cushion folded up in the double cab when the interior sensors are armed.
- Do not leave the glasses holder open.

NOTE

- To permanently deactivate the interior motion sensor, see an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
- Fuel fired heater may trigger false alarms. If you are using the fuel fired heater, direct the air flow towards the foot well.

Alarm Horn

Battery back-up sounder

The battery back-up sounder is an extra alarm system which will sound a siren when the alarm is triggered. When you lock your vehicle the system is armed. The sounder has its own battery and will sound an alarm siren even if someone disconnects your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.
### Alarm

**Triggering the alarm**

Once armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door or the bonnet without a valid key or remote control.
- If someone removes the multi function display.
- If you switch the ignition on without a valid key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement within the vehicle.
- On vehicles with a battery back-up sounder, if someone disconnects the vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning flasher will flash for five minutes. Any further attempts to perform one of the above will trigger the alarm again.

**Full and Reduced Guard**

**Full Guard**

Full guard is the standard setting. In full guard, the interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOTE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>This may result in false alarms if animals or moving objects are inside your vehicle.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Reduced Guard**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOTE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To switch this feature on or off, see an Authorised Mazda Repairer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOTE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reduced guard is available only on vehicles with remote central locking.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Selecting Full or Reduced Guard**

Locking the doors with the key will activate reduced guard.

To deactivate reduced guard, unlock the doors with the key or remote control.

To activate full guard, lock the doors with the remote control.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOTE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You can set the alarm to reduced guard for the current locking cycle only. The alarm will reset to full guard the next time you unlock and then relock the vehicle with the remote control.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Some models.*
Alarm

**ARMING THE ALARM**

To arm the alarm, lock the vehicle. See **Locks** (page 38).

**DISARMING THE ALARM**

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and inserting the key into the ignition switch with a correctly coded key within 12 seconds, or unlocking the doors with the remote control.
Steering Wheel

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

⚠️ WARNING

Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving.

NOTE

Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See Sitting in the Correct Position (page 97).

⚠️ WARNING

Make sure that you fully engage the locking lever when returning it to its original position.
Steering Wheel

Audio Control

| A | Volume up |
| B | Seek up   |
| C | Volume down |
| D | Seek down |
| E | Mode      |

- **Mode**
  - Press and **hold** the mode button to select the audio source.
  - Press the mode button to:
    - tune the radio to the next preset station
    - accept an incoming telephone call
    - end a telephone call.

- **Seek**
  - Press the seek button to:
    - tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band
    - play the next or the previous CD track.
  - Press and **hold** the seek button to:
    - tune the radio up or down the frequency band
    - seek through a CD track.

Voice Control

- **Voice control**
  - Press the voice control button to select or deselect voice control.
  - For further information: See Voice control (page 49).

*Some models.*
Wipers and Washers

WINDSCREEN WIPERS

⚠️ CAUTION
Operating this function with the engine off will drain the battery.

A Single wipe
B Intermittent wipe or auto wipers
C Normal wipe
D High speed wipe

▲ Intermittent wipe

A High sensitivity
B On
C Low sensitivity

AUTOWIPERS

⚠️ WARNING
- Do not switch autowipers on in dry weather conditions. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or flies hit the windscreen.
- Replace the wiper blades as soon as they begin to leave bands of water and smears. If you do not replace them, the rain sensor will continue to detect water on the windscreen and the wipers will operate, even though the majority of the windscreen is dry.
- Fully defrost the windscreen in icy conditions before you switch autowipers on.
- Switch autowipers off before you enter a car wash.
If you switch autowipers on, the wipers will not cycle until water is detected on the windscreen. The rain sensor will then continuously measure the amount of water on the windscreen and adjust the speed of the wipers automatically. Adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor by turning switch on the wiper lever. With low sensitivity, the wipers will operate when the sensor detects a lot of water on the windscreen. With high sensitivity, the wipers will operate if the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windscreen.

**WINDSCREEN WASHERS**

⚠️ **CAUTION**

Operating this function with the engine off will drain the battery.

⚠️ **WARNING**

*Do not operate the windscreen washers for more than 10 seconds or when the reservoir is empty.*
Checking the wiper blades

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness. Clean the wiper blade lips with water applied with a soft sponge.

Changing the wiper blades

Changing the windscreen wiper blades

NOTE

- The windscreen wiper blades are different in length.
- If you install wiper blades of the wrong length, the wiper blades can clash damaging the wiper system.

1. Pull the wiper blade and arm away from the glass.
2. Press and hold the locking button.
3. Remove the wiper blade.
4. Install in the reverse order.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOTE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lighting

**LIGHTING CONTROL**

▼ Lighting control positions

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Auto-light control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Headlamps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Side and tail lamps</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

▼ Approach lamps

The side lamps and number plate lamps will come on and stay illuminated for 25 seconds when the vehicle is unlocked with the remote control. If a door is opened, the lights will stay on until the door is closed, ignition is turned on or for 10 minutes.

▼ Emergency stop signal

Your Mazda is equipped with an emergency stop signal system that is designed to determine whether you are depressing the brake pedal with greater force than during normal braking such as in a situation requiring emergency braking. If the system determines that such a situation is occurring, it flashes all the direction indicators rapidly to caution the driver of the vehicle following behind your vehicle of the sudden braking situation.

The system is cancelled when the brake pedal is released or the system determines that the brake pedal is no longer heavily depressed based on the rate at which the vehicle speed decreases.

▼ High and dipped beam

Push the lever forward to switch between high and dipped beam.

**Headlamp flasher**

Pull the lever towards the steering wheel.
Lighting

**NOTE**

- If you bring your vehicle to a complete stop while all the direction indicators are flashing rapidly, the rapid flashing of all the direction indicators changes back to the normal flashing pattern.
- The emergency stop signal system does not operate at vehicle speeds under about 50 km/h (30 mph).
- If the brake pedal is depressed while driving on slippery roads, the emergency stop signal system could operate causing all the turn and lane change signals to flash.

**AUTOLAMPS**

![Autolamps switch](image)

**WARNING**

*In severe weather conditions, it maybe necessary to switch your headlamps on manually.*

**NOTE**

If you have switched autolamps on, you can only switch the high beam on when autolamps has switched the headlamps on.

The headlamps will come on and go off automatically depending on the ambient light.
Lighting

**RUNNING LAMPS**

⚠️ **WARNING**

*The autolamps switch position may not activate the headlamps in all low visibility conditions, such as daytime fog. Always ensure that your headlamps are switched to auto or on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.*

To switch the system on:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Switch the lighting control to the off or autolamp position.

**FRONT FOG LAMPS**

⚠️ **WARNING**

*Only use the front fog lamps when visibility is considerably restricted by fog, snow or rain.*

**NOTE**

You cannot switch the front fog lamps on unless you have switched the headlamps on.

*Some models.*
Lighting

REAR FOG LAMPS*

![Rear Fog Lamp Switch]

**WARNING**

- Only use the rear fog lamps when visibility is restricted to less than 50 metres (164 feet).
- Do not use the rear fog lamps when it is raining or snowing and visibility is more than 50 metres (164 feet).

**NOTE**

You cannot switch the rear fog lamps on unless you have switched the headlamps and front fog lamp on.

*Some models.*
### HEADLAMP LEVELLING*

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>A</strong></td>
<td>Without headlamp levelling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>B</strong></td>
<td>With headlamp levelling</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can adjust the level of the headlamp beams according to the vehicle load.

Set the headlamp levelling control to zero when your vehicle is unloaded. Set it to provide illumination between 35 and 100 metres (114 and 328 feet) when your vehicle is partially or fully loaded.

---

*Some models.*
Lighting

HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS

For item location: See At a Glance (page 3).

DIRECTION INDICATORS

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Right-hand side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Left-hand side</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lighting

INTERIOR LAMPS

▼ Courtesy lamp

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Door contact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you set the switch to position B, the courtesy lamp will come on when you unlock or open a door. If you leave a door open with the ignition switch off, the courtesy lamp will go off automatically after some time to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging. To switch it back on, switch on the ignition for a short time.

The courtesy lamp will also come on when you switch off the ignition. It will go off automatically after a short time or when you start or restart the engine.

If you set the switch to position C with the ignition switch off, the courtesy lamp will come on. It will go off automatically after a short time to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging. To switch it back on, switch on the ignition for a short time.

CHANGING A BULB

⚠ WARNING

- Switch the lights and the ignition off.
- Let the engine compartment and the bulb cool down before removing it.

⚠ CAUTION

Only fit bulbs of the correct specification. See Bulb Specification Chart (page 67).

NOTE

The following instructions describe how to remove the bulbs. Fit replacements in the reverse order unless otherwise stated.

You may notice fogging or small water droplets in the lamp units from time to time. This does not affect the function of the lamp, and will clear when the lamps are turned on and the vehicle is driven.

NOTE

If in any doubt about any of the following bulb replacement procedures, please have the bulb replaced by your Authorised Mazda Repairer.
Lighting

▼ Headlights high and low beam

⚠️ CAUTION
- Do not touch the glass of the bulb.
- Ensure bulb is correctly seated before replacing the spring clip. Checking the bulb location through the front of the headlamp lens can be a useful aid to ensuring the bulb is correctly aligned.

1. Open the bonnet. See Opening and Closing the Bonnet (page 169).
2. Disconnect the electrical connector by pressing in the spring releases on both sides of the connector.
3. Remove the rubber boot.
4. Release the bulb retaining spring clip and remove the bulb.
5. Insert the replacement bulb and retain it using the spring clip.

NOTE
Ensure that the rubber boot seals correctly against the bulb and headlight housing and that it is not out of shape while installing.

▼ Side lamps, running lamp and front direction indicators

Side lamp/Running lamp

1. Remove the bulb.

Front direction indicator
Lighting

1. Remove the screw.
2. Remove the retainers.
3. Partially peel back the mudguard.
4. Remove the bulb.

▼ Front fog lamps

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Disconnect the electrical connector.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Turn the bulb holder anti-clockwise and remove it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

**NOTE**
You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.

▼ Side direction indicator light

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Slide the lens to the rear and remove it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Disconnect the electrical connector.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

**NOTE**
These are not serviceable items, please consult your repairer if they fail.

▼ Exterior mirror lamps

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Side direction indicator light</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

A Side direction indicator light

E133682
**Lighting**

▼ **Rear lamps**

**Type 1**

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Remove the screws.
3. Remove the rear lamp.
4. Turn the bulb holder anti-clockwise and remove it.
5. Remove the bulb.

**Type 2**

1. Remove the screws.
2. Remove the lens.
3. Remove the bulb.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Tail and brake lamp</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Direction indicator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Tail and brake lamp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Reversing lamp/Rear fog lamp</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

E135655
Lighting

▼ Number plate lamp

Type 1

1. Slide the unit away from the connector and remove it.
2. Remove the connector with bulb.
3. Remove the bulb.

Type 2

1. Remove the screws.
2. Remove the lens.
3. Remove the bulb.

▼ Interior lamp

Freestyle and double cab

1. Carefully prise out the lamp.
2. Turn the bulb holder anti-clockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb.

▼ Front map lamp

Without alarm sensor

1. Carefully prise out the lamp.
2. Turn the bulb holder anti-clockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb.
With alarm sensor

1. Carefully prise out the lamp.
2. For reading lamps, turn the bulb holder anti-clockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb.
4. For centre lamp, carefully prise out the lamp lens.
5. Remove the bulb.

Centre high mount stop lamp
Type 1
1. Remove the cover.
2. Remove the screws.
3. Carefully prise out the lamp.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector.
5. Remove the bulb holder by turning it to 45 degree anticlockwise.
6. Remove the bulbs.
## BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bulb</th>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>Power (watts)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Headlights high and low beam</td>
<td>H4</td>
<td>55/60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front direction indicator</td>
<td>P21W</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side lamp (Without running lamp)</td>
<td>W5W</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side lamp and running lamp (With running lamp)</td>
<td>W21/5W</td>
<td>21/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front fog lamp</td>
<td>H11</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side direction indicator light*</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear direction indicator</td>
<td>WY21W</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tail and brake lamp</td>
<td>W21/5W</td>
<td>21/5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reversing lamp</td>
<td>W21W</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear fog lamp</td>
<td>W21W</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number plate lamp</td>
<td>W5W</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior lamp</td>
<td>W5W</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centre high mount stop lamp</td>
<td>W5W</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 Bulb replacement is not possible as the bulb is an integral part of the unit. The side direction indicator light unit has to be changed.
Windows and Mirrors

POWER WINDOWS

⚠️ WARNING

Do not operate the electric windows unless they are free from obstruction.

Make sure the opening is clear before closing a window:
Closing power windows are dangerous. A person’s hands, head, or even neck could be caught by the window and result in serious injury or even death. This warning applies especially to children.

Always lock all passenger power windows with the power window lock switch on the driver’s side while children are in the vehicle, and never allow children to play with power window switches:
Leaving the power window switches unlocked while children are in the vehicle is dangerous. Power window switches that are not locked with the power window lock switch would allow children to operate power windows unintentionally which could result in serious injury if a child’s hands, head or neck becomes caught by the window.

⚠️ CAUTION

To prevent burning out the fuse and damaging the power window system, do not open or close more than three windows at once.

NOTE

- If you operate the switches often during a short period of time, the system might become inoperable for a certain time to prevent damage due to overheating.
- If you operate both the switch on the relevant door and the switch for that window on the driver's door at the same time, the window will stop moving.

Switch on the ignition to operate the electric windows.

▼ Driver's door switches (Double cab)

You can operate all the windows with the switches on the door trim panel of the driver’s door.

A Open
B Close

68

Form No.8FX5-EI-17DT
Windows and Mirrors

▼ Driver's door switches (Regulare and Freestyle cab)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>Open</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Close</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

▼ Front and rear passenger's door switches

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>Open</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Close</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

▼ Opening and closing the windows automatically (Driver's window only)

Press or lift the switch to the second action point and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

▼ Safety switch for the rear windows

A switch in the driver's door disables the rear and front passenger electric window switches.

▼ Resetting the memory of the electric windows

⚠️ WARNING

The anti-trap function is deactivated until you have reset the memory.

In the event of a flat battery or after the battery has been disconnected from the vehicle, you must reset the memory separately for each window.

1. Open the window.
2. Lift and hold the switch to second action point until the window is fully closed.
3. Hold the switch lifted for one more second and release.
4. Open the window using the first action point and try to close it automatically using second action point.
5. If the window does not open or close automatically when the switch is pressed or lifted to second action points, repeat the procedure.
Windows and Mirrors

▼ Safety mode

⚠️ WARNING

The anti-trap function is not active during this procedure.

If the system detects a malfunction, it enters a safety mode. The windows will move for only about 0.5 seconds at a time and then stop again. Close the windows by pressing the switch again when the windows stop moving. Have this checked immediately.

▼ Overriding the anti-trap function

⚠️ CAUTION

While you close the window (auto-up) for the third time with the obstacle in the way, the anti-trap function is disabled. Make sure there are no obstacles in the way of the closing window.

To override this protection function when there is a resistance, for example, in the winter, proceed as follows:

1. Close the window twice until it reaches the resistance and let it reverse.

2. Close the window a third time to the resistance. The anti-trap function is disabled and you cannot close the window automatically. The window will override the resistance and you can fully close it manually.

3. If the window does not close after the third attempt, have it checked by a properly trained technician.

▼ Manual folding mirrors

Folding

Push the mirror towards the door window glass.

Unfolding

Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

EXTERIOR MIRRORS

⚠️ WARNING

Do not overestimate the distance of the objects that you see in the convex mirror. Objects seen in convex mirrors will appear smaller and further away than they actually are.
ELECTRIC EXTERIOR MIRRORS

⚠️ WARNING

Do not overestimate the distance of the objects that you see in the convex mirror. Objects seen in convex mirrors will appear smaller and further away than they actually are.

The electric exterior mirrors are fitted with a heating element that will defrost or demist the mirror glass. See Heated Windows (page 96).

Electric folding mirrors

To fold and unfold the mirrors, briefly press the switch. If the switch is pressed again while the mirrors are moving, they will stop and reverse the direction of movement.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Left-hand mirror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Right-hand mirror</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Windows and Mirrors

INTERIOR MIRROR

⚠️ WARNING
Do not adjust the mirror when your vehicle is moving.

NOTE
Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.

You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. Some mirrors also have a second pivot point. This lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

▼ Auto-Dimming Mirror *

NOTE
Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. Mirror performance may be affected. A rear centre passenger or raised rear centre head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.

The mirror will dim automatically to reduce glare when bright lights are detected from behind your vehicle. It will automatically return to normal reflection when you select reverse gear to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.

* Some models.
GAUGES

The equipment and installation position varies by vehicle.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Tachometer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Fuel gauge (Two types: E—F display and 0—1 display)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Engine coolant temperature gauge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Speedometer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Illumination dimming button</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Information display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>Trip computer display select and reset button</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

▼ Fuel gauge

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol tells you on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler cap is located.

▼ Engine coolant temperature gauge

Shows the temperature of the engine coolant. At normal operating temperature, the needle will remain in the centre section.

⚠️ CAUTION

Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been resolved.

If the needle enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the engine, switch the ignition off and determine the cause once the engine has cooled down. See Engine Coolant Check (page 178).
WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators will come on briefly when you switch the ignition on to confirm that the system is operational:

- ABS warning lamp
- Vehicle immobiliser indicator
- Brake system warning lamp
- Ignition warning lamp
- Airbag warning lamp
- Low fuel level warning lamp
- Dynamic stability control (DSC) indicator
- Oil pressure warning lamp
- Oil Change Reminder Indicator (Diesel only)
- Engine warning lamps
- Four-wheel drive indicator
- Four-wheel drive low (4L) indicator
- Electronic locking differential (ELD) indicator
- Water-in-fuel indicator (Diesel only)
- Washer fluid level indicator
- DPF (Diesel Particulate Filter)
- Ice/Frost warning indicator

▼ ABS warning lamp *

If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. You will continue to have normal braking (without ABS). Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

▼ Vehicle immobiliser indicator *

The immobiliser indicator will blink if the key is removed from the ignition or a wrong key is inserted.

▼ Brake system warning lamp

It illuminates when the parking brake is engaged.

* Some models.
WARNING

Reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Use your brakes with care.

If it illuminates when you are driving, check that the parking brake is not engaged. If the parking brake is not engaged, this indicates a malfunction. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.

Ignition warning lamp

If the ignition warning lamp comes on when you are driving, switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have this checked immediately. Have this checked by an expert.

Airbag warning lamp

If it illuminates while driving, this indicates a malfunction. Have this checked as soon as possible.

Low fuel level warning lamp

If the low fuel level warning lamp comes on, refuel as soon as possible. The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol tells you on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler cap is located.

Low tyre pressure warning *

Will illuminate when your tyre pressure is low. If the lamp remains on with the engine running or when driving, check your tyre pressure as soon as possible.

It will also illuminate momentarily when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

*Some models.
Instrument Cluster

▼Dynamic stability control (DSC) indicator*

While driving, it flashes during activation of the system. After switching on the ignition, if it does not illuminate or illuminates continuously while driving, this indicates a malfunction. During a malfunction, the system switches off. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

If you switch DSC off, the lamp will flash twice and remain illuminated. The lamp will go out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off.

▼Oil pressure warning lamp

If the oil pressure warning lamp comes on when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Stop, and switch the engine off and check the engine oil level. See Engine Oil Check (page 177).

▼Oil Change Reminder Indicator (Diesel only)

The oil change reminder indicator informs that the engine requires an engine oil change due to excessive build up of soot within the engine oil.

▼Engine warning lamps

Malfunction indicator lamp

⚠️ CAUTION

Do not resume your journey if the oil pressure warning lamp comes on despite the oil level being correct. Have this checked immediately.

* Some models.
Powertrain warning lamp

**All vehicles**
If either lamp illuminates when the engine is running, this indicates a fault. The engine will continue to run but it may have limited power. If it flashes when you are driving, reduce the speed of your vehicle immediately. If it continues to flash, avoid heavy acceleration or deceleration. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.

⚠️ **WARNING**

_Have this checked immediately._

If both lamps illuminate together, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so (continued use may cause reduced power and cause the engine to stop). Turn the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. If the engine restarts have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately. If the engine does not restart the vehicle must be checked before continuing your journey.

▼ **Four-wheel drive indicator** *

The four-wheel drive indicator lamp will come on when the transfer shift switch is in the 4H or 4L position. This will flash while engaging to 4H or 4L. See _Electronic Locking Differential_ (page 125).

▼ **Four-wheel drive low (4L) indicator** *

The four-wheel drive low (4L) indicator lamp will come on when the transfer shift switch is in 4L position. It will flash while engaging to 4L position. See _Electronic Locking Differential_ (page 125).

*Some models.*

---

77
Instrument Cluster

▼ Electronic locking differential (ELD) indicator*

The ELD indicator lamp will come on when the rear differential is locked. The lamp will flash if an error has been detected or if the engage or disengage request cannot be completed. See Electronic Locking Differential (page 125).

▼ Water-in-fuel indicator*

The water-in-fuel indicator lamp will come on if there is excess water in the fuel filter. Drain off the water immediately. See Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap (page 180).

▼ Washer fluid level indicator*

It illuminates when the windscreen washer fluid level goes below the minimum mark. See Washer Fluid Check (page 181).

▼ DPF (Diesel Particulate Filter)*

If this turns on, drive under the following conditions to assist the regeneration process.

- Drive your vehicle at a constant speed, preferably on a main road or motorway, for a minimum of 20 minutes.
- Avoid prolonged idling and always observe speed limits and road conditions.
- Do not switch the ignition off.
- Use a lower gear than normal to maintain a higher engine speed when appropriate (ideally, 1,500-3,000 rpm) while driving until the warning lamp turns off.

* Some models.
If this warning lamp turns on even after driving under the above conditions, or this warning lamp and the malfunction indicator lamp (\(\text{\textcircled{M}}\)) turn on, have the system inspected by an Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.

**Ice/Frost warning indicator**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WARNING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Even if the temperature rises to above +4 °C (39 °F) there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It will illuminate and glow orange when the outside air temperature is between 4 °C and 0 °C (39 °F and 32 °F). It will glow red when the temperature is below 0 °C (32 °F).

**Door open warning lamp**

The door open warning lamp will come on when you switch the ignition on and if you have not closed the doors properly.

**Glow plug indicator - For Diesel vehicles**

See Starting a Diesel Engine (page 116).

**Direction indicators**

Right side turn indicator

Left side turn indicator

The direction indicator will flash when you use the direction indicators. A sudden increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed bulb.

*Some models.*
Instrument Cluster

▼ Headlamp indicator

The headlamp indicator will come on when you switch the side and tail lamps on.

▼ High beam indicator

The high beam indicator will come on when you switch the headlamp high beam on. It will flash when you use the headlamp flasher.

▼ Front fog lamp indicator *

The front fog lamp indicator will come on when you switch the front fog lamps on.

▼ Rear fog lamp indicator *

The rear fog lamp indicator lamp will come on when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

▼ Seat belt indicator

See Seat belt reminder (page 31).

▼ Gear shift indicator lamp (Manual only)

It will illuminate to inform you that shifting to a higher gear may give better fuel economy and lower CO2 emissions.

*Some models.
**Instrument Cluster**

**Cruise control**

It will illuminate when you have set a speed using the cruise control system.

**AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS**

**Door open warning**

The door open warning chime will sound if the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 10 km/h (6.2 mph) and you have not closed the doors.

**Lights on warning**

The lights on warning chime will sound if the key is not in position II or III and open any door before switching off the lights.

**Not in park warning**

The not in park warning chime will sound if the automatic transmission lever is not in park position and you open the driver's door.

**Parking brake warning**

The parking brake warning chime will sound if the parking brake is left engaged and the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 5 km/h (3 mph).

**Restraints back-up warning**

The restraints back-up warning chime will sound if there is a malfunction in the restraints warning lamp. 5 sets of 5 tone bursts will be heard every 30 minutes.

**Low fuel level warning**

Low fuel level warning chime will sound when the low fuel level warning lamp is activated and/or the information display is showing 80, 40, 20, 0 km (50, 25, 10, 0 miles) remaining.

*Some models.*

81
**Instrument Cluster**

- **Turn indicator**
  The turn indicator chime will sound when the left or right turn indicator is activated.

- **Direction indicators warning**
  The direction indicator warning chime will sound if the left or right direction indicator is left on and driven for more than approximately 3.2 km (1.98 miles).

- **Seat belt reminder**
  The seat belt warning chime will sound if the driver's and/or passenger's seat belt is unbuckled and the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 25 km/h (15.5 mph).

- **Alarm warning**
  The alarm warning chime will sound if the vehicle is unlocked with the mechanical key and not the transmitter. The chime will sound for up to 12 seconds until the unlock button is pressed on the transmitter or a correctly coded key is inserted into the ignition and turned to position II or III. If 12 second elapses before this occurs, the vehicle alarm will sound.

- **Key in ignition warning**
  The key in ignition warning chime will sound if the key is inserted into the ignition (but not turned to position II or III) and the driver's door is opened.

- **Over speed warning**
  Over speed warning chime will sound if the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 120 km/h (74.5 mph) indicated.

- **Low washer fluid warning**
  Low washer fluid warning chime will sound if the washer fluid level in the washer bottle is low.

- **Missed lock warning**
  Missed lock warning chime will sound if the door is not locked after pressing the lock button.

**NOTE**

This feature is default off. To activate it, contact your Authorised Mazda Repairer.

*Some models.*
GENERAL INFORMATION

**WARNING**

*Do not operate the information display controls when the vehicle is moving.*

**NOTE**

The information display will remain on for several minutes after you switch off the ignition.

---

**TRIP COMPUTER**

**Controls**

For item location: See *Gauges* (page 73).

Press the *SET/RESET* button less than 2 seconds to:

- Select between the trip computer displays

Press and hold the *SET/RESET* button for more than two seconds to:

- Reset trip A
- Reset trip B
- Reset average fuel consumption
- Reset average speed

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A  Gear display (auto transmission only)
B  Trip computer display
C  Odometer display

**Odometer**

Registers the total mileage of the vehicle.
The trip computer display includes the following information displays:

- **Trip A**
- **Trip B**
- **Distance to empty**
- **Average Fuel**
- **Instant Fuel**
- **Average Speed**
- **Outside Temperature**

**Tripmeter (A and B)**

- Trip A: 1588 km, 000288 mi
- Trip B: 1736 km, 000179 mi

**Distance to empty**

- 128 km, 000808 mi
- 79 mi, 000502 mi

Registers the mileage of individual journeys.

**Distance to empty**

Indicates the approximate distance the vehicle will travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern may cause the value to vary.
Information Displays

▼ Average fuel consumption

Indicates the current average fuel consumption.

▼ Average speed

Indicates the average speed calculated since the function was last reset.

▼ Instantaneous fuel consumption

Indicates the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.
Information Displays

▼ Outside air temperature *

Shows the outside air temperature.

NOTE

The position of the trip computer display may vary depending on the information shown in the display.

PERSONALISED SETTINGS

▼ Language setting

A choice of eleven languages are available from 01 to 11 in the order shown below:

01: English - GB
02: Swedish - S
03: German - D
04: Dutch - NL
05: French - F
06: Italian - I
07: Spanish - E
08: Portuguese - P
09: Turkish - TR
10: Russian - RUS
11: Polish - PL

To enter the language set menu:

1. With ignition off, press and hold the light dimming button. For item location: See Gauges (page 73). and switch ignition to on.
2. The display will show the language set menu active.
3. Press the SET/RESET to select between the different languages.

* Some models.
4. Press and hold the SET/RESET button to set the currently displayed language.

5. A chime will be heard to confirm the selection.

6. The display will then return to normal operation.

\textbf{Units of measure}

To select metric or imperial units for outside temperature display:

1. Change display mode to “Outside Temperature.”

2. Press and hold the SET/RESET button for more than two seconds and the units will change.

Toggling the units of measure using this display will affect the following displays:

- Outside air temperature.
- The temperature display in the automatic air-conditioning.
- The set temperature in the multi-function display.
Air-Conditioning

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

▼ Outside air

Keep the air intakes forward of the windscreen free from obstruction (snow, leaves etc.) to allow the air-conditioning system to function effectively.

▼ Recirculated air

⚠️ CAUTION

Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to mist up. If the windows mist up, follow the settings for defrosting and demisting the windscreen.

The air currently in the passenger compartment will be recirculated. Outside air will not enter the vehicle.

▼ Heating

Heating performance depends on the temperature of the engine coolant.

▼ Air conditioning

NOTE

- The air conditioning operates only when the temperature is above 4 °C (39 °F).
- If you use the air conditioning, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher.

Air is directed through the evaporator where it is cooled. Humidity is extracted from the air to help keep the windows free of mist. The resulting condensation is directed to the outside of the vehicle and it is therefore normal if you see a small pool of water under your vehicle.

▼ General information on controlling the interior climate

Fully close all the windows.

▼ Warming the interior

Direct the air towards your feet. In cold or humid weather conditions, direct some of the air towards the windscreen and the door windows.

▼ Cooling the interior

Direct the air towards your face.
**Air distribution control**

You can set the air distribution control to any of the indicated positions. A small amount of air is directed towards the windscreen in positions B and C.
Air-Conditioning

▼ Blower

Press the recirculated air button to toggle between outside air and recirculated air.

▼ Temperature control

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Blue</th>
<th>Cold</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Warm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A/C</td>
<td>Maximum cooling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAX</td>
<td>Maximum cooling</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Set all controls to the positions shown.

Heating the interior quickly

Select the outside air.
Air-Conditioning

Ventilation

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Face level and footwell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Face level</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Set the air distribution control to position A or position B. Set the blower and temperature to any position and select the outside air. Open the air vents to suit individual requirements.

Switching the air conditioning on and off

Press the A/C button to switch the air conditioning on and off.

Cooling with outside air

Switching the air conditioning on and select the outside air.

Cooling the interior quickly

Selecting the A/C MAX will provide maximum occupant cooling. To switch the A/C MAX off deselect the A/C or recirculated air.

Defrosting and demisting the windscreen quickly

Switching the air conditioning on and select the outside air.
Air-Conditioning

Selecting air to windscreen will automatically switch the A/C on and select the outside air.

**Reducing interior air humidity**

Selecting air to windscreen will automatically switch the A/C on and select the outside air.

**AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL**

The system controls the temperature, amount and distribution of the air flow automatically and adjusts them according to the driving and weather conditions. A short press of the AUTO button once switches on the auto mode.

**NOTE**

- When in AUTO, ensure that the temperature is set to the desired level, (22 °C (71 °F) is preferred).
- If the air-conditioning is operated, information relating to this system is displayed in the information display. See Information Displays (page 83).
- Avoid adjusting the settings when the vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold. The automatic air-conditioning adjusts to the current circumstances automatically. For the system to function properly, the side and centre vents should be fully open.
- The sunload sensor is located on top of the instrument panel. Do not cover the sensor with any objects.
- The interior temperature sensor is located behind the grill below the air distribution control. Do not cover the grill with any objects.
- At low outside temperatures, when the system is in auto mode, the air flow will be low and the air stream will be directed to the windscreen and the side windows as long as the engine is cold.
Air distribution control

- A Windscreen
- B Face level
- C Footwell

To adjust air distribution, press the desired button. The combination of settings that can be selected are A, B, C, A and C and B and C.

Blower

NOTE

When the blower is in AUTO mode, no blower setting indicators will be illuminated.

When the blower speed is controlled manually by operating the blower dial, the blower setting is indicated in the display above the air distribution controls. To return to auto mode, short press the AUTO button.
Air-Conditioning

▼ Temperature control

You can set the temperature between 16 °C (61 °F) and 28 °C (82 °F) in steps of 0.5 °C (1 °F). In position LO (below 16 °C (61 °F) the system will switch to permanent cooling, in HI (above 28 °C (82 °F) to permanent heating, and not regulate a stable temperature.

Interconnection Mode

In Interconnection mode the temperature settings for both the driver’s and passenger’s side are linked. If you adjust the temperature by turning switch on the wiper lever on the driver’s side, the settings will be adjusted to the same setting on the passenger’s side.

To switch individual operation mode on

NOTE

Adjusting the blower speed will put the system into individual operation mode.

Long press of the AUTO button or selecting the temperature for the passenger’s side with the rotary control on the passenger’s side. The temperature for the driver’s side will remain unchanged. You can now adjust the driver and passenger side temperatures independently. The temperature settings for each side are shown in the display. You can set a temperature difference of up to 4 °C (8 °F).

NOTE

If you set a temperature difference of greater than 4 °C (8 °F), the temperature on the other side will be adjusted so that the difference remains 4 °C (8 °F).

To switch individual operation mode off

Press the AUTO button for three seconds or select HI or LO on the driver's side. The passenger's side temperature will be adjusted to the driver's side temperature.

▼ Recirculated air

Press the recirculated air button to toggle between fresh air and recirculated air.
**NOTE**

When the system is in auto mode and the interior and exterior temperatures are quite hot, the system selects recirculated air automatically to maximise cooling of the interior. Once the selected temperature is reached, the system will reselect outside air automatically.

**▼ Cooling the interior quickly**

Selecting the A/C MAX will provide maximum occupant cooling. A second press of the A/C MAX button will switch the A/C MAX off.

**▼ Windscreen defrosting and demisting**

Press the MAX defrost button for quick demisting of the windscreen. Fresh air will flow into the vehicle and A/C is automatically selected. The blower speed, temperature control and fresh air operate automatically and cannot be adjusted in this mode. The blower is set to maximum speed and the temperature to HI.

When you select MAX defrost, the heated windows switch on automatically and switch off after a preset time. A second press of the MAX defrost button will return the system to the previous settings. To return to auto mode, short press the AUTO button.

**▼ Switching the air conditioning on and off**

Press the A/C button to switch the air conditioning on and off. The light in the button indicates the status of the A/C.
Air-Conditioning

NOTE
The A/C operates only when the engine is running.

▼ Switching off the automatic air-conditioning

Press the power button to switch the system on and off. When switched off, recirculated air is selected but it is also possible to manually select the fresh air.

HEATED WINDOWS

▼ Heated windows

NOTE
Make sure the engine is running before operating the heated windows.

Heated windscreen

Press the button to clear the window of thin ice and fog.

Heated rear window

Press the button to clear the window of thin ice and fog. Press the button to switch the system off. The heated rear window will automatically turn off after a short period of time.

NOTE
Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean the inside of the rear window or to remove decals from the inside of the rear window. This may cause damage to the heated grid lines and will not be covered by your warranty.
SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

Max. 30°

![Diagram of correct sitting position]

**WARNING**

- Do not adjust the seats when the vehicle is moving.
- Only when you use the seat belt properly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect.

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seat belt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a collision. We recommend that you:

- sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- do not recline the seatback more than 30 degrees.
- adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forwards as possible, remaining comfortable.

- keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 250 millimetres (10 inches) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- position the shoulder strap of the seat belt over the centre of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.
Front Seats

⚠️ WARNING

- Do not use any accessory seat covers that are not specifically designed for seats with side airbags. These seat covers must be fitted by properly trained technicians.
- Do not adjust the seats when the vehicle is moving.

▼ Adjusting the lumbar support

⚠️ WARNING

Rock the seat backwards and forwards after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged in its catch.

⚠️ CAUTION

Do not move the front seats too close to the instrument panel.
Seats

▼ Adjusting the height of the driver's seat (Manual seats)

Each pull or press on the lever will raise or lower the height by a small amount.

▼ Adjusting the angle of the seatback (Manual seats)

⚠️ WARNING

• Rock the seatback backwards and forwards after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged in its catch.

• If the front passenger seat has been moved forwards, rock the seat backwards and forwards after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged in its catch.
Seats

Front seat - Freestyle cab

NOTE
On freestyle cab vehicles the front passenger seat can be adjusted to allow the rear passenger to gain easier access.

▼Folding the seat backrest (Bench seat - Regular cab)
Seats

▼ Moving the seats backwards and forwards (Electric seats)

▼ Adjusting the height of the driver's seat (Electric seats)

⚠️ CAUTION

Do not move the front seats too close to the instrument panel.
Seats

▼ Adjusting the angle of the seatback (Electric seats)

▼ Tilting the seat (Electric seats)
HEAD RESTRAINTS

▼ Adjusting the head restraint

⚠️ WARNING

- Raise the rear head restraint when the rear seat is occupied by a passenger.
- (Except when installing a booster cushion)
  When using a forward facing child restraint on a rear seat, always remove the head restraint from that seat.

▼ Removing the head restraint

Press the locking button using a suitable tool and remove the head restraint.

⚠️ WARNING

Always drive with the head restraints installed when seats are being used and make sure they are properly adjusted:
Driving with the head restraints adjusted too low or removed is dangerous. With no support behind your head, your neck could be seriously injured in a collision.

Always drive with the head restraints set up when seats are being used and make sure they are properly set up:
Driving with the head restraints not set up is dangerous. With no support behind your head, your neck could be seriously injured in a collision.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.
Seats

REAR SEATS

▼ Folding the rear seat cushion

Freestyle cab

![Image of Freestyle cab rear seat cushion folding]

CAUTION
When the cushion is folded down, the cushion tether strap must be stowed in the pocket provided.

▼ Folding the rear seatback - Double cab

WARNING
When folding the seatbacks down, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seatback and seat frame.

CAUTION
- Do not use the rear surface of the rear seat back as a load floor.
- Do not de-latch and fold the seat back when the seat cushion is folded up.
To fold the seatback down
1. Pull the release strap upwards.
2. Push the seatback forwards.

To return the seatback to its upright position:
3. Push the seatback to the upright position.

⚠️ WARNING

- When folding the seatbacks up, make sure that the belts are visible to an occupant and not caught behind the seat.
- Make sure that the rear seatback is secure and fully engaged in its catches

▼ Rear seat arm rest

1. Push the arm rest into the seatback and hold.
2. Pull the strap to release.

HEATED SEATS

⚠️ CAUTION

Operating this function with the engine off will drain the battery.

The seat heating will operate only when the ignition is switched on. The maximum temperature is reached after five or six minutes. It is regulated thermostatically. The seat heating will remain on until either the heated seat switch or the ignition is turned off.
Convenience features

**CLOCK**

For detailed instructions on how to adjust the clock. See *Setting the clock on the audio unit* (page 243).

**INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER**

**NOTE**

Adjusting the illumination dimmer switch will alter the illumination level of the interior displays and switches.

For item location: See *Gauges* (page 73). Press the dimming button to step the illumination dimming level in large steps. Press and hold the dimming button to adjust the illumination dimming level smoothly in fine adjustment levels.
Convenience features

CIGAR LIGHTER*

⚠️ CAUTION

- If you use the socket when the engine is not running, the battery may discharge.
- Do not hold the cigar lighter element pressed in.

NOTE

You can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances that have a maximum current rating of 10 Amperes. Use only Mazda accessory connectors or connectors specified for use with SAE standard sockets.

ASHTRAY*

NOTE

The removable ashtray can be placed in any of the front or rear cup holders.

Press the element in to use the cigar lighter. It will pop out automatically. For item location: See At a Glance (page 3).

*Some models.
Convenience features

AUXILIARY POWER POINTS

⚠️ CAUTION

If you use the auxiliary power socket when the engine is not running, the battery may discharge.

NOTE

Switch the ignition on to use the auxiliary power socket.

You can use the auxiliary power socket to power 12 volt appliances that have a maximum current rating of 10 Amperes. Use only Mazda accessory connectors or connectors specified for use with SAE standard sockets. For item location: See At a Glance (page 3).

CUP HOLDERS

⚠️ WARNING

- Do not place hot drinks in the cup holders when the vehicle is moving.
- Do not place glass objects in the cup holders.

▼ Front cup holders

Type 1
Convenience features

Type 2

OVERHEAD CONSOLE

▼Rear cup holders*

*Some models.
Convenience features

STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

Driver side

Passenger side

Centre console
Convenience features

**AUXILIARY INPUT (AUX IN) SOCKET**

For item location see: See *At a Glance* (page 3).
See *Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket* (page 260).

**USB PORT**

For item location: See *At a Glance* (page 3).
See *Connectivity* (page 284).
Convenience features

FLOOR MATS

We recommend the use of Genuine Mazda floor mats.

⚠️ WARNING

Make sure the floor mats are secured with the hooks or the retainers to prevent them from bunching up under the foot pedals (Driver's side):
Using a floor mat that is not secured is dangerous as it will interfere with the accelerator and brake pedal operation (driver's side), which could result in an accident.

Only use a floor mat which conforms to the shape of the floor on the driver's side and make sure it is oriented correctly. Secure the floor mat using the hooks or retainers.
There are various ways to secure floor mats depending on the type used, therefore secure the mat according to the type.
After installing the floor mat, make sure that it does not slide from side to side or back and forth, and that there is sufficient clearance with the accelerator and brake pedals on the driver's side.
After removing the floor mat for cleaning or some other reason, always securely reinstall it while paying attention to the precautions just mentioned.

⚠️ WARNING

Do not install two floor mats, one on top of the other, on the driver's side:
Installing two floor mats, one on top of the other, on the driver's side is dangerous as the retention pins can only keep one floor mat from sliding forward.

Loose floor mat(s) will interfere with the foot pedals and could result in an accident.

If using an all-weather mat for winter use always remove the original floor mat.
STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE

GENERAL INFORMATION

▼ General points on starting
If the battery has been disconnected the vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approx. 8 kilometres (5 miles) after reconnecting the battery. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. Any unusual driving characteristics during this period may be disregarded.

▼ Starting the engine by towing or pushing
Do not push-start your Mazda.

IGNITION SWITCH

⚠️ WARNING
Never return the key to position 0 or I when the vehicle is in motion.

0 The ignition is off.
I The ignition and all main electrical circuits are disabled.

⚠️ CAUTION
Do not push-start a vehicle that has a manual transmission. It can damage the emission control system.

NOTE
Do not leave the ignition key in this position for too long to avoid discharging the battery.

II The ignition is switched on. All electrical circuits are operational. Warning lamps and indicators illuminate. This is the key position when driving. You must also select it when being towed.

III The starter motor is activated. Release the key as soon as the engine starts.

NOTE
You cannot start a vehicle with an automatic transmission by pushing it.
Starting and Stopping the Engine

**STEERING WHEEL LOCK**

When you remove the key from the ignition switch, the steering column lock is activated as soon as you turn the steering wheel. The steering will be unlocked when the key is moved to position **ACC**.

**STARTING A PETROL ENGINE**

**NOTE**

You can only operate the starter for a limited period of time, for example 10 seconds. The number of start attempts is limited to approximately six. If you exceed this limit, the system will not allow you to try again until a period of time has elapsed, for example 30 minutes.

**Cold or hot engine**

**Vehicles with manual transmission**

**NOTE**

- Do not touch the accelerator pedal.
- Releasing the clutch pedal during engine start may stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Start the engine.

**Vehicles with automatic transmission**

**NOTE**

- Do not touch the accelerator pedal.
- Releasing the brake pedal during engine start may stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position P or N.
2. Fully depress the brake pedal.
3. Start the engine.

**All vehicles**

If the engine does not start, wait for a short period and try again. If the engine does not start after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and follow the **Flooded engine** procedure. If you have difficulty starting the engine when the temperature is below -25 °C (-13 °F), press the accelerator pedal to the mid-way point of its travel and try again.

**▼ Flooded engine**

**Vehicles with manual transmission**

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Start the engine.

**Vehicles with automatic transmission**

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position P or N.
2. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Fully depress the brake pedal.
4. Start the engine.

**All vehicles**

If the engine does not start, repeat the **Cold or hot engine** procedure.

**▼ Engine idle speed after starting**

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting will vary depending on the engine temperature. The idle speed is automatically increased when the engine is cold this is to heat the catalytic converter. This keeps the vehicle emissions to an absolute minimum. The idle speed will slowly decrease to the normal level as the catalytic converter warms up.
Starting and Stopping the Engine

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE

Cold or hot engine

All vehicles

NOTE
- When the temperature is below -15 °C (5 °F), you may need to crank the engine for up to 25 seconds.
- Continue cranking the engine until it starts.
- You can only operate the starter for a maximum of 30 seconds at a time.

Switch the ignition on and wait until the glow plug indicator goes off.

Vehicles with manual transmission

NOTE
Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Start the engine.

Vehicles with automatic transmission

1. Select park or neutral.
2. Fully depress the brake pedal.
3. Start the engine.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER*

The DPF forms part of the emissions reduction system equipped on your vehicle. The DPF filters diesel particulates (soot) from the exhaust gas.

Regeneration

If the DPF lamp ( ) turns on while the engine is running, it means DPF regeneration is necessary.

WARNING

Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials:
Parking or idling your vehicle over dry grass or other combustible material is dangerous and could result in a fire. The DPF regeneration creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after DPF regeneration, and after you have switched the ignition off.

CAUTION

Avoid running out of fuel while doing the DPF regeneration.

* Some models.
Unlike a normal filter which requires periodic replacement, the DPF has been designed to regenerate, or clean itself to maintain operating efficiency. The regeneration process takes place automatically. However, some driving conditions mean that you may need to assist in the regeneration process. If the DPF lamp (,) turns on, it means the DPF regeneration requires assistance. If you drive frequently under any of following conditions, you will need to drive the vehicle occasionally to assist in the DPF regeneration if the DPF lamp (,) turns on.

- You drive only short distances.
- You frequently stop and start the vehicle.
- You accelerate and decelerate the vehicle frequently.

If the DPF lamp (,) turns on while you are driving the vehicle, do the following to assist the DPF regeneration.

- Drive your vehicle at a constant speed, preferably on a main road or motorway, for a minimum of 20 minutes.
- Avoid prolonged idling and always observe speed limits and road conditions.
- Do not switch the ignition off.
- Use a lower gear than normal to maintain a higher engine speed when appropriate (ideally 1,500-3,000 rpm) while driving until the warning lamp turns off.

**SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE**

- **Vehicles with a turbocharger**

  **CAUTION**

  Do not switch the engine off when it is running at high speed or immediately after heavy towing. If you do, the turbocharger will continue running after the engine oil pressure has dropped to zero. This will lead to premature turbocharger bearing wear.

  Release the accelerator pedal. Wait until the engine has reached idle speed and then switch it off.
Fuel and Refuelling

**SAFETY PRECAUTIONS**

⚠️ **WARNING**

- Stop refuelling after the fuel nozzle stops the second time. Additional fuel will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank which could lead to fuel overflowing. Fuel spillage could be hazardous to other road users.
- Do not use any kind of flames or heat near the fuel system. The fuel system is under pressure. There is a risk of injury if the fuel system is leaking.

**FUEL QUALITY - PETROL**

⚠️ **CAUTION**

Do not use leaded petrol or petrol with additives containing other metallic compounds (e.g. manganese-based). They could damage the emission system.

**NOTE**

- We recommend that you use only high quality fuel. (Ex. EN228)
- The use of additives or other engine treatments not approved by Mazda is not recommended.
- Ethanol blended fuels up to 20% (E20) is acceptable to be used in this vehicle.

Use **minimum 91 octane unleaded** petrol that meets the relevant national specification.
Fuel and Refuelling

FUEL QUALITY - DIESEL

⚠️ WARNING
Do not mix diesel with oil, petrol or other liquids. This could cause a chemical reaction.

⚠️ CAUTION
- Do not add paraffin, paraffin or petrol to diesel. This could cause damage to the fuel system.
- Use diesel that meets the relevant national specification.

NOTE
- We recommend that you use only high quality fuel. (Ex. EN590)
- The use of additives or other engine treatments not approved by Mazda is not recommended.
- Bio-diesel blended fuels up to 10% (B10) can be used in this vehicle.
  * Maximum 15% (B15) in Indonesia

▼ Long-term storage
Most diesel fuels contain bio-diesel, it is recommended to fill the tank with purely mineral diesel (where available) or add an anti-oxidant prior to long-term storage of your vehicle exceeding two months. Your repairer can help you with a suitable anti-oxidant.
Fuel and Refuelling

**CATALYTIC CONVERTER**

⚠️ **WARNING**

Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during use, and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

**FUEL FILLER FLAP**

⚠️ **WARNING**

- Take care when refuelling to avoid spilling any residual fuel from the fuel nozzle.
- Do not use any kind of flames or heat near the fuel system. The fuel system is under pressure. There is a risk of injury if the fuel system is leaking.

⚠️ **CAUTION**

If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the fuel filler flap briefly from a distance not less than 20 centimetres (8 inches).

**NOTE**

Central locking also locks and unlocks the fuel filler flap. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 38).

Driving with a catalytic converter

⚠️ **CAUTION**

- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Do not crank the engine for long periods.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster leads. See **Jump-Starting the Vehicle** (page 190).
- Do not switch the ignition off when driving.

Vehicles equipped with cap system
Fuel and Refuelling

1. Press the flap to open it.
2. Open the flap fully until it engages. Turn the fuel filler cap anti-clockwise.
3. When the filler cap is removed, a hissing noise may be heard. This is normal and should be disregarded.
4. To close, turn the fuel filler cap clockwise until it clicks.
5. Close and push the fuel filler flap to lock it.

\[\text{\textbf{\textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{WARNING}}}}}\]

Stop refuelling after the fuel nozzle stops the second time. Additional fuel will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank which could lead to fuel overflowing. Fuel spillage could be hazardous to other road users.

\[\text{\textbf{\textit{\textcolor{red}{WARNING}}}}\]

We recommend that you wait at least 10 seconds before removing the fuel nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

Slightly raise the fuel nozzle to remove it.
Fuel and Refuelling

**REFUELLING**

⚠️ **CAUTION**

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with the incorrect fuel. This could damage the engine. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.

---

**FUEL CONSUMPTION**

The CO2 and fuel consumption figures are derived from laboratory tests according to EEC Directive 80/1268/EEC and subsequent amendments and are carried out by all vehicle manufacturers. They are intended as a comparison between makes and models of vehicles. They are not intended to represent the real world fuel consumption you may get from your vehicle. Real world fuel consumption is governed by many factors including; driving style, high speed driving, stop/start driving, air conditioning usage, the accessories fitted and towing etc.

Your Authorised Mazda Repairer can give you advice on improving your fuel consumption.
Transmission

MANUAL TRANSMISSION

▼ Selecting reverse gear

⚠️ CAUTION
Do not engage reverse gear when the vehicle is moving. This can cause damage to the transmission.

NOTE
Fully depress the clutch pedal and wait for three seconds before you select reverse gear.

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE

NOTE
A clicking sound from the driveline may be heard while shifting between ranges, which is normal.

▼ Two-wheel drive, high range (2H)
Use for all normal road driving and also for off-road driving across dry, level terrain.

▼ Four-wheel drive, high range (4H)

⚠️ WARNING
Do not use four-wheel drive 4H for normal road driving.
## Transmission

**NOTE**

The four-wheel drive indicator lamp will come on when the transfer shift switch is in the 4H position. See Warning Lamps and Indicators (page 74).

Use for off-road driving.

### ▼ Four-wheel drive, low range (4L)

**WARNING**

Do not use four-wheel drive 4L for normal road driving.

**NOTE**

The four-wheel drive low range 4L and four-wheel drive indicator lamps will come on when the transfer shift switch is in the 4L position. See Warning Lamps and Indicators (page 74).

Use for more extreme off-road conditions, such as steep ascents and descents. Also use when low speed manoeuvring is necessary, such as reversing a trailer or negotiating a boulder-strewn river bed.

### ▼ Shifting between 2H and 4H

**NOTE**

When shifting to 2H, all the stability control (DSC) functions are reactivated.

This can be done with the vehicle moving up to 110 km/h (68 mph), but only with the accelerator pedal released. During the shift the indicator lamp will flash.

1. Stop the vehicle when it is safe to do so.
2. Fully depress the clutch pedal (manual transmission).
3. Move the transmission selector lever to the neutral (N) position (automatic transmission).
4. Turn the transfer shift switch from 2H to 4L or 4L to 2H.

During the shift the indicator lamp will flash. If it continues to flash, check whether the above conditions are met.

### ▼ Shifting between 4H and 4L

**NOTE**

When shifting to 4L the Engine Traction Control and Trailer Sway Assist are deactivated. Hill Descent Control, Hill Launch Assist and Brake Traction Control remain active.
1. Stop the vehicle when it is safe to do so.

2. Fully depress the clutch pedal (manual transmission).

3. Move the transmission selector lever to the neutral (N) position (automatic transmission).

4. Turn the transfer shift switch from 4H to 4L or from 4L to 4H.

During the shift the indicator lamp will flash. If it continues to flash, check whether the above conditions are met.

**ELECTRONIC LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL**

**WARNING**

The vehicle should not be operated on sealed roads with the system engaged. Doing so may lead to excessive tyre noise and wear. The system is intended for use on consistently slippery or loose surfaces.

The system locks the left and right portions of the rear axle together to form a solid driving axle, resulting in increased rear wheel traction in certain conditions.

**NOTE**

The system will only activate if the vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h (20 mph) and the accelerator pedal is released.

Press the Electronic Locking Differential (ELD) button to activate the system. For item location: See At a Glance (page 3). The rear axle will lock and unlock only when the internal gears are aligned and there is no torque load on the differential. To aid alignment, drive the vehicle in a straight line with the accelerator pedal released. Alternatively, drive slowly forwards and backwards while moving the steering wheel from side to side to allow the internal differential gears to align.

**NOTE**

The system can be used in any transmission drive range (2H, 4H or 4L).
Transmission

The system will:
- Automatically disengage when a speed of 40 km/h (25 mph) is exceeded.
- Automatically re-engage when the speed drops below 30 km/h (20 mph).
- Automatically disengage when the ignition is turned off.

If the system is selected when driving above 40 km/h (25 mph), the request is stored and will be engaged when the vehicle speed reduces to 30 km/h (20 mph). The ELD indicator lamp will flash until either the vehicle speed reduces and the differential lock is engaged or the driver deselects the ELD button.

**NOTE**

- When the system is engaged, the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) functions such as Stability Control, Traction Control, Hill Descent Control, Emergency stop signal, Hill Launch Assist and Trailer Sway Assist deactivate, the DSC off indicator illuminates, and the HDC on indicator turns off.
- When the ABS is operating, the system will be disengaged.

### AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

#### Selector lever positions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>P</th>
<th>Park</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>Reverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>Neutral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>Sport mode and manual shifting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S+</td>
<td>Manual shift up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S-</td>
<td>Manual shift down</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**WARNING**

*Apply the brakes before moving the selector lever and keep them applied until you are ready to move off.*
Transmission

NOTE
A cold engine has a higher idle speed. This will increase the tendency for your vehicle to **creep** when you have selected a drive gear.

Press the button on the selector lever to select reverse and park. The selector lever position will be shown in the information display.

**Park**

**WARNING**
- **Select park only when your vehicle is stationary.**
- **Apply the parking brake and select park before leaving your vehicle. Make sure that the selector lever is latched in position.**

NOTE
- To move the selector lever from park position, apply the footbrake and ignition key in position II.
- An audible warning will sound if you open the drivers door and you have not selected park.
- The battery saver will deactivate the warning chime after a period of time.

In this position, power is not transmitted to the drive wheels and the transmission is locked. You can start the engine with the selector lever in this position.

**Reverse**

**WARNING**
Select reverse only when your vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idle speed.

**Neutral**
In this position, power is not transmitted to the drive wheels but the transmission is not locked. You can start the engine with the selector lever in this position.

**Drive**
Select drive to shift automatically through the forward gears.

**Sport mode**

NOTE
- Sport mode is to shift automatically through the forward gears in a more sporty manner.
- When towing heavy loads, or in hilly terrain, it is recommended that sport mode is selected. This will result in cooler transmission temperatures and additional engine braking.

Activate sport mode by moving the selector lever from drive position towards the driver. This is indicated in the instrument cluster by displaying ‘S’. See **General Information** (page 83). Sport mode will remain active until you shift manually up or down the gears.
Transmission

NOTE
When you select position S, a gear change may occur depending on the accelerator pedal position in relation to actual vehicle speed.

Manual shifting

⚠️ WARNING
Do not hold the selector lever permanently in – or +.

When the vehicle is stationary, only the 1st and 2nd gears can be selected. Manual shifting is sequential, therefore gears cannot be skipped. The transmission will remain in the selected gear. When the engine speed is too low or idle, it will downshift to 2nd gear. The selected gear is indicated in the instrument cluster. See General Information (page 83).

▼ Active Adaptive Shift (AAS)

The transmission will select the appropriate gear for optimum performance based on ambient temperature, road gradient, vehicle load and driver input.

▼ Hints on driving with an automatic transmission

Moving off

NOTE
A shift will occur only when the vehicle speed and the engine speed are appropriate.

Manual shifting can be done only when the selector lever is in position S. Move the selector lever forward to downshift and backward to upshift.

⚠️ WARNING
It is not possible to tow-start or push-start a vehicle fitted with an automatic transmission. See Jump-Starting the Vehicle (page 190).

1. Release the parking brake.
2. Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal.
Transmission

Stopping
1. Release the accelerator pedal and press the brake pedal.
2. Apply the parking brake.

Kickdown
Press the accelerator pedal fully with the selector lever in the drive position to select the next highest gear for optimum performance. Release the accelerator pedal when you no longer require kickdown.

\[\text{E} \text{mergency park position release button}\]

Use the button to move the selector lever from the park position in the event of an electrical malfunction or if your vehicle has a flat battery.

\[\text{CAUTION}\]
Take care when opening the cover.

Lift up the cover in the centre console next to the selector lever with a suitable tool. Push down the locking button in the slot and simultaneously move the selector lever out of the P position.

\[\text{NOTE}\]
If position P is selected again, this procedure must be repeated.
Brakes

**PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION**

**▼ Brakes (Disc and/or Drum)**
If you require information regarding the wear limit specification for the brake disc plates and drums, or the measurement method, please contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. The information is made freely available.

**▼ Disc brakes**
Wet brake discs result in reduced braking efficiency. Dab the brake pedal when driving from a car wash to remove the film of water.

**▼ ABS**

⚠️ **WARNING**

*The ABS does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.*

The ABS helps you to maintain full steering and directional stability when you brake heavily in an emergency, by preventing the road wheels from locking.

**▼ Brake override**
In the event that the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, applying steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal will both slow the vehicle and reduce engine power.
If you experience this condition:

1. Apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. Turn the engine off.
3. Select park (automatic transmission only).
4. Apply the parking brake.

Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interferences. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to a repairer.
HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

When the ABS is operating, the brake pedal will pulse. This is normal. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. The ABS will not eliminate the dangers inherent when:

- you drive too close to the vehicle in front of you.
- the vehicle is aquaplaning.
- you take corners too fast.
- the road surface is poor.

PARKING BRAKE

⚠️ WARNING

Vehicles with an automatic transmission should always be left with the selector lever in position P (Park).

- Press the foot brake pedal firmly.
- Pull the parking brake lever up smartly to its fullest extent.
- Do not press the release button while pulling the lever up.
- If your vehicle is parked on a hill and facing uphill, select first gear or P (Park) and turn the steering wheel away from the kerb.
- If your vehicle is parked on a hill and facing downhill, select reverse gear or P (Park) and turn the steering wheel towards the kerb.

To release the parking brake, press the brake pedal firmly, pull the lever up slightly, depress the release button and push the lever down.
Hill Descent Control (HDC) (Some models.)

**PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION**

HDC operates in conjunction with DSC to provide greater control when off-road, particularly when descending steep slopes. HDC operation is fully automatic when engaged.

During a hill descent when driving off-road, engine braking is used to control the speed of descent. If engine braking alone is insufficient to control the vehicle's speed, HDC will slow the vehicle using the braking system.

If the vehicle is fitted with a manual transmission, HDC should only be used in first, or reverse gears. If the vehicle is fitted with an automatic transmission, HDC should only be used in D, R, or Sport mode. When in D the vehicle will select the most appropriate gear.

**WARNING**

Before driving off-road it is absolutely essential that in-experienced drivers become fully familiar with the vehicle's controls. In particular, Sport mode, Hill Descent Control (HDC).

**USING HILL DESCENT CONTROL**

**NOTE**

When the rear differential lock is engaged, the HDC will not be available.

**Selecting HDC**

HDC can be selected at speeds below 60 km/h (37 mph). To select HDC, press and release the HDC on switch. For item location: See At a Glance (page 3).

**NOTE**

- Once HDC is selected, it will be activated at speeds below 35 km/h (22 mph) and deactivated above 40 km/h (25 mph) but will not turn off until vehicle speed exceeds 60 km/h (37 mph).
- HDC will be turned off when the ignition is off.

HDC on indicator on the switch will illuminate continuously when HDC is fully active.

HDC will temporarily deactivate during the following conditions:

- High brake temperature. Operation resumes once the brakes cool down.
Hill Descent Control (HDC) (Some models.)

- DSC indicator is illuminated and operating.
- Electronic locking differential is operating.

▼ HDC operation (if equipped)

With HDC engaged, the speed of descent can be altered using the cruise control steering wheel switches. SET + increases the speed, and SET – decreases the speed.

To increase speed press, and hold, the SET + switch until the desired speed is achieved. When the switch is released, the speed will be maintained.

To decrease speed press, and hold, the SET – switch until the desired speed is achieved. When the switch is released, the speed will be maintained.

To increase or decrease speed gradually, tap the SET + or SET – switch as required. Each tap of the switch will increase, or decrease the speed in increments of 0.5 km/h (0.3 mph). The speed can also be increased or decreased by pressing the accelerator pedal or brake pedal respectively.

**NOTE**

- Each gear has a pre-determined minimum speed.
- Descent speed will only increase on a slope steep enough to provide additional momentum. Therefore, use of the + switch on a gentle slope may not increase the speed.
- If the brake pedal is depressed, HDC will be overridden and the brakes will operate as normal. When the brake pedal is released, HDC will resume control of the descent.
- If HDC is switched off during a descent, HDC assistance will fade out gradually. This is to prevent loss of control if HDC is switched off in error. HDC will resume control when switched back on if assistance is still required, but at the speed the vehicle is travelling when the pedal is released.
- When HDC is operating, a noise may be heard from the Brake Control Module in the engine compartment. This is normal.
- When HDC is operating, DSC indicator will flash.

When driving off-road HDC can be permanently selected, but it will only provide assistance when the speed parameters are met.
Dynamic Stability Control

**PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION**

▼ Dynamic stability control (DSC)

**WARNING**

* DSC does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

---

**Dynamic stability control (DSC) warning lamp**

The DSC warning lamp will flash when the system is operating. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 74).

▼ Brake assist

**WARNING**

* Brake assist does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

Brake assist will detect when you brake heavily by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It will provide maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal. Brake assist can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

▼ Trailer sway assist

**WARNING**

* Trailer sway assist does not relieve you of your responsibility to tow with due care and attention.
* Disabling DSC will turn off the system.

---

The DSC supports stability when the vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path. This is performed by braking individual wheels and reducing engine torque as needed. The system also provides an enhanced traction control function by reducing engine torque and braking if the wheels spin when you accelerate. This improves your ability to pull away on slippery roads or loose surfaces, and improves comfort by limiting wheel spin in hairpin bends.

---

### Table

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>without DSC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>with DSC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Trailer sway assist is an enhanced feature of DSC, and automatically detects when an attached trailer starts to sway. If this situation occurs, the system will automatically brake individual wheels to stabilise the trailer and vehicle. In case a very severe sway is detected, the engine torque will be reduced and the vehicle will be slowed automatically.
Dynamic Stability Control

**USING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL**

**NOTE**

- The system will be switched on automatically every time you switch the ignition on.
- When the system is deactivated with the transfer switch in 2H position, the DSC OFF indicator will flash twice to indicate that the system is completely turned off and remains illuminated. Press the switch again to enable the system. For item location: See At a Glance (page 3).
- DSC is switched off when the transfer switch is in 4L position or the Electronic Locking Differential is operating.

**▼ 2-wheel drive vehicles**

Press and hold the switch for one second to deactivate Engine Traction Control, Trailer Sway Assist and Brake Traction Control. Hill Launch Assist remains active.

**▼ 4-wheel drive vehicles**

**NOTE**

All the stability control (DSC) functions are reactivated when 2H position is selected.

Transfer shift switch in **4H** position:

- Press and hold the switch for one second to deactivate Engine Traction Control and Trailer Sway Assist. Hill Descent Control, Hill Launch Assist and Brake Traction Control remain active.

Transfer shift switch in **4H** or **4L** position:

- Press and hold the switch for five seconds to deactivate Engine Traction Control, Trailer Sway Assist and Brake Traction Control. Hill Descent Control and Hill Launch Assist remain active.

Transfer shift switch in **2H** position:

- Press and hold the switch for one second to deactivate Engine Traction Control, Brake Traction Control and Dynamic Stability Control including Trailer Sway Assist. Hill Descent Control and Hill Launch Assist remain active.
**Hill Launch Assist**

**PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION**

Hill Launch Assist is a function which assists the driver in accelerating from a stop while on a slope. When the driver releases the brake pedal and depresses the accelerator pedal while on a slope, the function prevents the vehicle from rolling by maintaining the braking force after the brake pedal is released.

For vehicles with a manual transaxle, Hill Launch Assist operates on a downward slope when the shift lever is in the reverse (R) position, and on an upward slope when the shift lever is in a position other than the reverse (R) position.

For vehicles with an automatic transaxle, Hill Launch Assist operates on a downward slope when the shift lever is in the reverse (R) position, and on an upward slope when the shift lever is in a forward gear.

**WARNING**

*Do not rely completely on Hill Launch Assist.*

*Hill Launch Assist is an auxiliary device for accelerating from a stop on a slope. The system only operates for about two seconds and therefore, relying only on the system, when accelerating from a stop is dangerous because the vehicle may move (roll) unexpectedly and cause an accident. The vehicle could roll depending on the vehicle's load or if it is towing something. In addition, for vehicles with a manual transaxle, the vehicle could still roll depending on how the clutch pedal or the accelerator pedal is operated. Always confirm the safety around the vehicle before starting to drive the vehicle.*
Hill Launch Assist

NOTE

- Hill Launch Assist does not operate on a gentle slope. In addition, the gradient of the slope on which the system will operate changes depending on the vehicle’s load.
- Hill Launch Assist does not operate if the parking brake is applied, the vehicle has not stopped completely, the clutch pedal is released (MT vehicles), or any door is open.
- While Hill Launch Assist is operating, the brake pedal may feel stiff and vibrate, however, this does not indicate a malfunction.
- Hill Launch Assist does not operate while the DSC warning lamp is illuminated.
- Hill Launch Assist does not turn off even if the DSC off switch is pressed to turn off the TCS/DSC.
- Hill Launch Assist does not operate during rear differential lock.
Parking Aids

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

⚠️ WARNING
The parking aid does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

⚠️ CAUTION
- Vehicles fitted with a trailer tow module not approved by us may not correctly detect obstacles.
- The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.
- The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves.
- The parking aid does not detect obstacles moving away from the vehicle. They will only be detected shortly after they start to move towards the vehicle again.
- If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the sensors briefly from a distance not less than 20 centimetres (8 inches).
- Parking aid sends tones via the audio system fitted and approved by us. If this is not working the parking aid system will not work.

NOTE
- On vehicles fitted with a tow bar, the rear parking aid is deactivated automatically when any trailer lamps (or lighting boards) are connected to the socket via a trailer tow module we have approved.
- Keep the sensors free from dirt, ice and snow. Do not clean with sharp objects.
- The parking aid may emit false tones if it detects a signal using the same frequency as the sensors or if the vehicle is fully laden.
- The outer sensors may detect the side walls of a garage. If the distance between the outer sensor and the side wall remains constant for three seconds, the tone will switch off. As you continue, the inner sensors will detect rearward objects.
**WARNING**

The parking aid does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

The parking aid is automatically activated when you select reverse gear with the ignition switched on.

**NOTE**

- It will chime once to indicate that the parking aid is activated.
- The indicator lamps will be displayed in the multi-function display. For item location: See At a Glance (page 3).

You will hear an intermittent tone at a distance of approximately 180 centimetres (71 inches) between the obstacle and rear bumper and approximately 50 centimetres (20 inches) to the side. Decreasing the distance accelerates the intermittent tone.

A Distance Indicator.
Parking Aids

As the distance decreases the indicator moves towards the vehicle. A continuous tone will start at a distance of less than 40 centimetres (15 inches) to the rear bumper.

A trailer symbol indicates there is a trailer attached and the system is disabled.

A | Malfunction indicator.

**NOTE**

If a malfunction is indicated the system will be disabled and a unique tone will be heard. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.
Parking Aids

REAR VIEW CAMERA*

⚠️ WARNING

- The operation of the camera may vary depending on the ambient temperature, vehicle and road conditions.
- The distances shown in the display may differ from the actual distance.
- Do not place objects in front of the camera.

The camera is located on the tailgate below the badge.

▼ Switching the rear view camera on

⚠️ WARNING

- The camera may not detect objects that are close to your vehicle.

Switch the ignition and the audio unit on. Move the transmission selector lever to reverse. The image is displayed on the rear view mirror screen. The camera may not operate correctly in the following conditions:
- Dark areas.
- Intense light.
- If the ambient temperature increases or decreases rapidly.
- If the camera is wet, for example in rain or high humidity.
- If the camera's view is obstructed, for example by mud.

▼ Using the display

⚠️ WARNING

- Obstacles above the camera position will not be shown. Inspect the area behind your vehicle if necessary.
- Marks are for general guidance only, and are calculated for vehicles in maximum load conditions on an even road surface.

*Some models.
Parking Aids

The lines show the distance from the outer edge of the front tyre plus two inches (51 millimeters) and the rear bumper.

A: Exterior mirror clearance - 4 inches (0.1 meter)
B: Red - up to 12 inches (0.3 meter)
C: Amber - 39 inches (1 meter)
D: Green - 79 inches (2 meter)
E: Black - centre line of the projected vehicle path

NOTE
When reversing with a trailer, the lines on the screen are not shown. The camera will show your vehicle direction and not the trailer.

Switching the rear view camera off

- Move the transmission selector lever from reverse gear. The display will switch off after a short period.
- The system will automatically switch off once your vehicle speed has reached approximately 15 km/h.
Cruise Control

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

⚠️ WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

Cruise control allows you to control your speed using the switches on the steering wheel. You can use cruise control when you exceed approximately 30 km/h (18 mph).

USING CRUISE CONTROL

⚠️ WARNING

Do not use cruise control in heavy traffic, on twisty roads or when the road surface is slippery.

▼ Switching cruise control on

NOTE

The system is ready for you to set a speed.
Cruise Control

▼ Setting a speed

Press to store and maintain your current speed. The cruise control indicator will illuminate. See Warning Lamps and Indicators (page 74).

▼ Changing the set speed

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOTE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed will not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, you will return to the speed that you previously set if the cruise control indicator is still illuminated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**WARNING**

Vehicles with manual transmission:
When you are going downhill, your speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes. Change down a gear and press the SET – switch to adjust the system in maintaining the set speed.

Vehicles with automatic transmission:
When you are going downhill, transmission will downshift to attempt to hold the speed. The driver may also have to apply the brake to maintain the speed. The set speed will turn off if the brake is applied.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Accelerate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Decelerate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To increase speed, press and hold the SET + switch until the desired speed is achieved. When the switch is released, the speed will be maintained.
To decrease speed, press and hold the SET – switch until the desired speed is achieved. When the switch is released, the speed will be maintained.
To increase or decrease speed gradually, tap the SET + or SET – switch as required. Each tap of the switch will increase or decrease the speed in increments of 1 km/h (0.6 mph). The speed can also be increased or decreased by pressing the accelerator pedal or brake pedal respectively.
Cruise Control

▼ Cancelling the set speed

Press the brake pedal or the CAN RES switch.

NOTE
The system will no longer control your speed. The cruise control indicator will not illuminate but the system will retain the speed that you previously set.

▼ Resuming the set speed

The cruise control indicator will illuminate and the system will attempt to resume the speed that you previously set.

▼ Switching cruise control off

The system will not retain the speed that you previously set. The cruise control indicator will not illuminate. Any of the following action may also switch off the system:
- Depressing the brake pedal.
- Applying the parking brake.
- Depressing the clutch pedal.
- Selecting neutral gear.
Load Carrying

GENERAL INFORMATION

⚠️ WARNING

- Use load securing straps to an approved standard, e.g. DIN.
- Make sure that you secure all loose items properly.
- Place luggage and other loads as low and as far forward as possible within the luggage or loadspace.
- Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle. See Vehicle identification (page 210).
- Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. See Vehicle identification (page 210).

⚠️ CAUTION

Do not allow items to contact the rear window.

TAILGATE

NOTE

The tailgate can be lowered for better ingress/egress of the loads.

⚠️ CAUTION

- Do not exceed the maximum permissible tailgate load of 220 kilograms (485 pounds).
- Do not lower the tailgate completely if a tow ball or a bumper is fitted.
- Make sure that you keep a firm grip of the tailgate to prevent it from dropping down.

Lowering the tailgate

1. Raise the tailgate slightly.
2. Pull the support lead rearwards.
3. Release the support lead from tailgate.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 to pull out the support lead on the other side.
LOAD RETAINING FIXTURES

▼ Rope hooks *

NOTE
The number of rope hooks may vary depending on your vehicle model.

Type 1

▼ Load rest

WARNING
A loaded load rest alters the vehicle's centre of gravity and aerodynamics. Take care when cornering, driving in crosswinds and at high speeds.

CAUTION
Do not exceed the permissible gross weight. See Vehicle Identification Plate (page 210).

NOTE
Secure luggage or cargo placed on the load rest with the load rest stoppers.

* Some models.
Driving Hints

GENERAL DRIVING POINTS

Vehicles with a diesel engine

If the low fuel level warning lamp comes on, refuel as soon as possible. If you continue driving without refuelling, the engine will start to run unevenly. This indicates that you are about to run out of fuel. Refuel immediately.

SAVING FUEL AND PROTECTION OF THE ENVIRONMENT

How you operate your Mazda determines how far it will travel on a tank of fuel. Use these suggestions to help save fuel and reduce CO2.

- Avoid long warm-ups. Once the engine runs smoothly, begin driving.
- Avoid fast starts.
- Drive at lower speeds.
- Anticipate when to apply the brakes (avoid sudden braking).
- Follow the maintenance schedule (page 183) and have an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer perform inspections and servicing.
- Use the air conditioner only when necessary.
- Slow down on rough roads.
- Keep the tyres properly inflated.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight.
- Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving.
- Keep the wheels in correct alignment.
- Keep windows closed at high speeds.
- Slow down when driving in crosswinds and headwinds.
RUNNING-IN

Tyres

⚠️ WARNING

New tyres need to be run-in for approximately 500 kilometres (300 miles). During this time, you may experience different driving characteristics.

Brakes and clutch

⚠️ WARNING

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 150 kilometres (100 miles) in town and for the first 1500 kilometres (1000 miles) on motorways.

Engine

⚠️ CAUTION

Avoid driving too fast during the first 1500 kilometres (1000 miles). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labour the engine.

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below -30 °C (-22 °F).
Driving Hints

**REDUCED ENGINE PERFORMANCE**

Your vehicle can be driven briefly if the engine overheats, without damage to the engine. The engine will continue to operate with limited power. The distance you can travel depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load, and terrain. If the needle moves to the upper limit position, the engine is overheating. See **Gauges** (page 73). If the temperature continues to rise, the fuel supply to the engine will be reduced. The air conditioning (if fitted) will also be turned off and the engine cooling fan will operate.

⚠️ **CAUTION**

Continued operation will increase the engine temperature, and cause the engine to shut down completely.

- Stop your vehicle as soon as possible.
- Immediately turn off the engine to prevent severe engine damage.
- Wait for the engine to cool down.
- Check the coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 178).
- Have the vehicle checked by an expert immediately.

**DRIVING THROUGH WATER**

**Driving through water**

⚠️ **WARNING**

Never cross fast-flowing deep streams, as your vehicle could be swept away.

⚠️ **CAUTION**

- Drive through water in an emergency only, and not as part of normal driving.
- Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.
- Always try to determine the depth of a crossing before driving the vehicle through.

In an emergency, the vehicle can be driven through water to a maximum depth as shown and at a maximum speed of 7 km/h (4 mph). Extra caution should be exercised when driving through flowing water.

4x2
Driving Hints

4x2 (vehicles with increased ride height) and 4x4

When driving in water, engage first gear and low range (if available), maintain a steady walking pace speed keeping the bow wave in front of the vehicle and do not stop. After driving through water, and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Depress the brake pedal lightly and check that full brake function is achieved.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that the vehicle's lights are fully operational.
- Check the power assistance of the steering system.
Driving Hints

VEHICLE LOADING

⚠️ WARNING

Never overload the vehicle and always observe the vehicle's weight ratings:
Overloading a vehicle is dangerous. The results of overloading can have serious consequences in terms of passenger safety. Too much weight on a vehicle's suspension system can cause spring or shock absorber failure, brake failure, handling or steering problems, irregular tyre wear, tyre failure or other damage.
Overloading makes a vehicle harder to drive and control. It also increases the distance required for stopping. In cases of serious overloading, brakes can fail completely, particularly on steep grades.

▷ GJV (Gross Vehicle Weight)

GJV is CW + PAYLOAD.
• GJV is Gross Vehicle Weight.
• CW is Curb Weight.
• Payload is the combination weight of accessories, cargo, hand luggage and passengers.

The maximum GJV is specified for each vehicle. Do not exceed the specified weight.

▷ GAW (Gross Axle Weight)

GAW (Gross Axle Weight) is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) - including vehicle curb weight and all payload.
Towing

TOWING A TRAILER *

Your Mazda was designed and built primarily to carry passengers and cargo. If you tow a trailer, follow these instructions because driver and passenger safety depends on proper equipment and safe driving habits. Towing a trailer will affect handling, braking, durability, performance, and economy.

⚠️ WARNING

Never overload vehicle or trailer. Consult an Authorised Mazda Dealer if you need further details.

⚠️ CAUTION

- Maximum permissible axle loads are not to be exceeded while towing and transporting.
- Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) when towing with a laden weight greater than 3,000 kg (6,613 lbs).
- Do not tow a trailer during the first 1,000 km (600 miles) of your new Mazda. If you do, you may damage the engine, transmission, differential, wheel bearings, and other power train components.

NOTE

Vehicles equipped with dynamic stability control (DSC) has trailer sway assist. See Dynamic Stability Control (page 134).

Place loads as low and central to the axle(s) of the trailer as possible. If you are towing with an unladen vehicle, the load in the trailer should be placed toward the nose, within the maximum nose load, as this gives the best stability. The stability of the vehicle to trailer combination is very much dependant on the quality of the trailer. Be aware of the towing load weight differences when towing at high altitudes. For altitudes exceeding 1,000 meters (3,281 feet), always reduce the towing load by 10% for every 1,000 meters (3,281 feet) increase in altitude from the load indicated under the maximum GCW (gross combination weight) heading in the maximum trailer towing-load table. If the determined maximum total towing load weight is exceeded, the engine and other power train parts may be damaged.

*Some models. 153
### Towing

**Weight limits**

The total trailer weight, gross combination weight and trailer nose weight must be within the prescribed limits in the Trailer Towing-Load Table.

**TRAILER TOWING-LOAD TABLE**

Because vehicle weights vary, adjustments must be made to meet the requirements in this table.

For any further details and advice please consult Authorised Mazda Repairer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variant</th>
<th>Drive</th>
<th>Transmission</th>
<th>Without trailer brake kg (lbs)</th>
<th>With trailer brake kg (lbs)</th>
<th>Max trailer nose weight kg (lbs)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.5L Petrol</td>
<td>4X2</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>750 (1654)</td>
<td>2200 (4850)</td>
<td>220 (485)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4x2*</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>750 (1654)</td>
<td>1700 (3748)</td>
<td>170 (375)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4X4</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>750 (1654)</td>
<td>1100 (2425)</td>
<td>110 (243)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2L Diesel (88 kW &amp; 92 kW)</td>
<td>4X2</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>750 (1654)</td>
<td>2200 (4850)</td>
<td>220 (485)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4x2*</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>750 (1654)</td>
<td>1600 (3527)</td>
<td>160 (353)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4X4</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>750 (1654)</td>
<td>1600 (3527)</td>
<td>160 (353)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2L Diesel (110 kW)</td>
<td>4X2</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>750 (1654)</td>
<td>2500 (5512)</td>
<td>250 (551)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4x2* (Final drive ratio 3.31)</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>750 (1654)</td>
<td>1800 (3968)</td>
<td>180 (397)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4x2* (Final drive ratio 3.55)</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>750 (1654)</td>
<td>3350 (7386)</td>
<td>335 (739)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4x2* Auto</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>750 (1654)</td>
<td>3350 (7386)</td>
<td>335 (739)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4X4</td>
<td>Manual and Auto</td>
<td>750 (1654)</td>
<td>3350 (7386)</td>
<td>335 (739)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2L Diesel</td>
<td>4x2* and 4x4 (Final drive ratio 3.31)</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>750 (1654)</td>
<td>1800 (3968)</td>
<td>180 (397)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4x2* and 4x4 (Final drive ratio 3.55)</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>750 (1654)</td>
<td>3350 (7386)</td>
<td>335 (739)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4x2* Auto</td>
<td>Manual</td>
<td>750 (1654)</td>
<td>3350 (7386)</td>
<td>335 (739)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4X4</td>
<td>Auto</td>
<td>750 (1654)</td>
<td>3350 (7386)</td>
<td>335 (739)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Vehicles with increased ride height.
WARNING

Always keep tow loads within specified limits as indicated in the Trailer Towing-Load Table:
Attempting to tow loads greater than those specified is dangerous as it may cause serious handling and performance problems that could result in personal injury or vehicle damage, or both.

Always keep the trailer nose weight within the specified limits in the Trailer Towing-Load Table:
Loading the trailer with more weight in the rear than in the front is dangerous. This could cause loss of vehicle control and an accident.

NOTE

- The total trailer weight and nose weight can be determined by weighing the trailer on platform scales at a highway weighing station or a trucking company.
- Appropriate total trailer weight and nose weight may prevent the danger of trailer sway from crosswinds, rough roads, or other causes.

▼ Trailer hitch

When towing a trailer, use a Mazda genuine tow bar on the vehicle and an appropriate trailer hitch. Use the original bolt holes drilled by the vehicle manufacture for securing the trailer hitch. Contact your Authorised Mazda Dealer for more information. See Towing equipment dimensions.(page 214)

CAUTION

If a Mazda genuine tow bar is not used, it could result in damage to the frame.

▼ Tyres

When towing a trailer, make sure all tyres are inflated to the recommended cold-tyre pressure, as indicated on the tyre pressure chart on the driver's door. Trailer tyre size, load rating, and inflation pressures should conform to tyre manufacturer specifications.
Towing

▼ Safety chains

Safety chains must be used as a precautionary measure should the trailer become unintentionally unhitched. They should cross under the trailer tongue and attach to the hitch. Leave enough slack to allow full turns. Consult literature published by your trailer or hitch manufacturer for more details.

⚠️ WARNING

Make sure the safety chain is securely attached to both the trailer and the vehicle prior to departure:
Towing a trailer without using a safety chain securely attached to both the trailer and the vehicle is dangerous. If damage occurs to the coupling unit or hitch ball, the trailer could wander into another lane and cause a collision.

▼ Trailer tow module

NOTE

Ensure that the indicator and brake lamps do not flicker with engine running while using a trailer with low power LED lamps.

To overcome flickering and to ensure the correct operation of the rear parking aid, a trailer patch harness should be connected between the trailer and the vehicle.

⚠️ CAUTION

Do not connect the trailer patch harness to the vehicle when the trailer is not connected.

NOTE

The trailer patch harness is available with the Authorised Mazda Repairer.

▼ Trailer lights

⚠️ CAUTION

Do not connect a trailer lighting system directly to the lighting system of your Mazda. This may damage your vehicle's electrical system and lighting systems. To connect the lighting system, consult an Authorised Mazda Dealer.
Towing

▼ Trailer brakes

If the total trailer weight exceeds 750 kg (1,650 lb) trailer brakes are required. If your trailer has brakes, make sure they meet regulations.

⚠️ WARNING

Do not connect a hydraulic trailer-brake system to your vehicle's brake system:
Connecting a hydraulic trailer-brake system directly to the vehicle brake system is
dangerous and will result in inadequate braking and possible injury.

▼ Trailer towing tips

Before driving

- Verify that your Mazda maintains a near-normal attitude when a loaded or unloaded trailer is connected. Do not drive if it has an abnormal front-up or front-down position. Inspect for incorrect nose weight, worn suspension parts, and trailer overloading. Have the vehicle inspected by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
- Make sure the trailer cargo is secure to prevent it from shifting.
- Make sure the mirrors meet all government regulations. Inspect them.
- Before starting out, inspect the operation of all vehicle and trailer lights and all vehicle-to-trailer connections. Stop and re-inspect all lights and connections after driving a short distance.

Driving

- Your Mazda will handle differently with a trailer in tow, so practice turning, backing, and stopping in a traffic-free area.
- Take time to get accustomed to the extra weight and length.
- Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph) when towing with a laden weight greater than 3000 kg (6613 lbs). If the local legal maximum speed with a trailer in tow is less than 80 km/h (50 mph), do not exceed the legal speed.

⚠️ CAUTION

If the vehicle exceeds 80 km/h (50 mph) with a trailer in tow, the vehicle could be damaged.

- When ascending a hill, shift into a lower gear to reduce the possibility of overloading or overheating the engine, or both.
Towing

⚠️ WARNING

The overrun brake on a trailer is not controlled by the anti-lock braking system.

- When descending a hill, shift into a lower gear and use engine compression as a braking effect. Pay constant attention to speed and use the brakes only as needed. Holding the brake pedal down for a prolonged period may cause the brakes to overheat and lose power.
- If the vehicle does not advance in 4x2 mode, switch to 4X4 mode.
- When towing a trailer or driving with heavy loads in mountainous areas on steep gradients, switch off the air conditioning and watch the temperature gauge carefully. If the needle moves to the H-position, the engine is overheating. Switch off the engine immediately. Do not resume the journey until the engine has cooled down. The air conditioning system may switch off automatically to prevent overheating of the engine.

Parking
Avoid parking on an incline with a trailer. If this must be done, follow these instructions.

Parking on an Incline
1. Set the parking brake and the brakes.
2. Have someone block the wheels of the vehicle and trailer while you apply the brakes.
3. After the wheels are blocked, release the parking brake and the brakes slowly, allowing the blocks to bear the load.
4. Set the parking brake firmly.
5. If the vehicle has an automatic transmission, put the selector lever in P. If it has a manual transmission, place the gear shift in 1 or R.

Starting on an Incline
1. Start the engine.
2. Release the parking brake and slowly pull away a short distance from the wheel blocks.
3. Stop on the nearest level ground, set the parking brake, and pick up the wheel blocks.
Fuses

FUSE BOX LOCATIONS

Left-hand drive

Right-hand drive

A | Passenger compartment fuse box
B | Engine compartment fuse box

▼ Passenger compartment fuse box
Fully open the driver's side storage compartment.
Fuses

Engine compartment fuse box

Release the catches and remove the cover.

CHANGING A FUSE

⚠️ WARNING

- Do not modify the electrical system of your vehicle in any way. Have repairs to the electrical system and the replacement of relays and high current fuses carried out by an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
- Switch the ignition and all electrical equipment off before touching or attempting to change a fuse.

⚠️ CAUTION

Fit a replacement fuse with the same rating as the one you have removed.

NOTE

- You can identify a blown fuse by a break in the filament.
- All fuses, except high current fuses, are a push fit.
The equipment and installation position varies by vehicle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Ampere rating</th>
<th>Circuits protected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CEM Power A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CEM Power B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 (Petrol)</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>Engine cooling fan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 (Diesel)</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>Glow plug control module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>ABS module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Electric windows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Four wheel drive (4×4) motor ground</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Power seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Electric windows</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Fuses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Ampere rating</th>
<th>Circuits protected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Blower motor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Four wheel drive (4×4) motor power</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Starter solenoid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Heated rear window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 (Petrol)</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Flex-fuel pump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 (Diesel)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Vapouriser glow plug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>A/C Clutch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Electric windows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Windscreen wiper motor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Windscreen wiper motor ground</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Cigar lighter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Horn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 (Petrol)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Fuel injectors or flex-fuel valve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 (Diesel)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Differential lock solenoid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Auxiliary power socket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Ignition coils, temperature and mass air flow sensor, glow plug module, vacuum control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>Electronic control module (ECM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Transmission control module (TCM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Heated exhaust gas oxygen, universal heated exhaust gas oxygen sensor, relay coils, fuel cut off switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Electronic control module (ECM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Battery monitoring sensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Auxiliary power socket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>A/C pressure switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Transmission control module (TCM)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CEM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>ABS module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Headlamp levelling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Heated seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Power mirrors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 (Petrol)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 (Diesel)</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Vapouriser pump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Alarm horn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Heated windscreen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Heated windscreen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>ABS module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Auxiliary power socket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Trailer tow module</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

162
### Fuses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Ampere rating</th>
<th>Circuits protected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Ignition relay, relay coils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Trailer tow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Electric windows</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Relay</th>
<th>Circuits switched</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R1 (Petrol)</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R1 (Diesel)</td>
<td>Key interlock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R2</td>
<td>Wiper on or off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R3</td>
<td>Horn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R4</td>
<td>A/C clutch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R5</td>
<td>Differential lock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R6</td>
<td>Wiper Hi/Lo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R7 (Petrol)</td>
<td>Engine cooling fan low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R7 (Diesel)</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R8 (Petrol)</td>
<td>Engine cooling fan high</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R8 (Diesel)</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R9</td>
<td>Flex-fuel pump, vapouriser glow plug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R10</td>
<td>Heated rear window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R11</td>
<td>Heated windscreen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R12</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R13</td>
<td>Electronic control module (ECM) power hold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R14</td>
<td>Ignition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R15</td>
<td>4×4 motor 2 (Clockwise)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R16</td>
<td>4×4 motor 1 (Counter clockwise)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R17</td>
<td>4×4 motor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R18</td>
<td>Security horn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R19</td>
<td>Starter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R20</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R21</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R22</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R23</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R24</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R25</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R26</td>
<td>Blower motor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R27</td>
<td>Power seat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Fuses

▼Passenger compartment fuse box
The equipment and installation position varies by vehicle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse</th>
<th>Ampere rating</th>
<th>Circuits protected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Fuel pump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Passive anti-theft system (PATS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Interior lamp, driver's door switch pack, mood lights, automatic shifter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Spare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Rain sensor module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Tachograph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Driver's door unlock, central double locking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Stop lamp switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Instrument cluster, integrated control module (ICP), tracking and blocking module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Central locking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Air conditioning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>Alarm horn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>On-board diagnostics II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>High beam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Front fog lamps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Reversing lamp, rear view mirror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Washer pump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Ignition switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Low audio/FSO audio, multifunction display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Multi-function display, hi audio, sync module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Interior motion sensor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Washer pump ground</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Central locking ground</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Driver's door unlock, central double locking ground</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>Instrument cluster, parking aid module, manual air conditioning, track and block IGN sense, rear view camera, rear view mirror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Restraint system, passenger airbag deactivation indicator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Tachograph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Not used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Vehicle recovery

TOWING POINTS

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

▼ All vehicles

⚠️ WARNING

- **Switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed.** The steering lock will engage and the direction indicators and brake lamps will not work if you do not.

- **The brake servo and the power steering pump do not operate unless the engine is running.** Press the brake pedal harder and allow for increased stopping distances and heavier steering.

⚠️ CAUTION

- Too much tension in the tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.

- **4X2:** Select neutral when your vehicle is being towed.

- **4X4:** In the event of a breakdown or a mechanical failure of the transmission your vehicle must be recovered with either **ALL** wheels off the ground or transported with **ALL** wheels on the ground while the vehicle is in 4X2 mode. Under no circumstances should the vehicle be towed with **ALL** wheels on the ground when in 4X4 mode.

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle that is being towed.
Vehicle recovery

▼ Vehicles with automatic transmission

⚠️ CAUTION

- It is recommended not to tow with the drive wheels on the ground. However, if it is required to move the vehicle from a dangerous location, do not tow your vehicle faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) or further than 80 kilometres (50 miles).

- In the event of a mechanical failure of the transmission the drive wheels must be lifted clear of the ground.
Maintenance

GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of Mazda Authorised Repairers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialised tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

In addition to regular servicing, we recommend that you carry out the following additional checks.

Be careful not to hurt yourself when inspecting your vehicle, replacing a tyre, or doing some kind of maintenance such as car washing. In particular, wear thick work gloves such as cotton gloves when touching areas that are difficult to see while inspecting or working on your vehicle. Doing inspections or procedures with your bare hands could cause injury.

The malfunction diagnosis connector is designed exclusively for connecting the specially designed device to perform on-board diagnosis.

Do not connect any devices other than the specially designed malfunction diagnosis devices for servicing. If any device other than the malfunction diagnosis device is connected, it may affect the vehicle's electrical devices or lead to damage such as battery depletion.

WARNING

- Switch the ignition off before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.
- Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage.
- Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan. Under certain conditions, the fan may continue to run for several minutes after you have switched the engine off.
CAUTION

When carrying out maintenance checks, make sure that filler caps are fitted securely.

Daily checks

- Exterior lamps.
- Interior lamps.
- Warning lamps and indicators.

Check when refuelling

- Engine oil level. See Engine Oil Check (page 177).
- Brake fluid level. See Brake and Clutch Fluid Check (page 179).
- Washer fluid level. See Washer Fluid Check (page 181).
- Tyre pressures (when cold). See Technical Specifications (page 209).
- Tyre condition. See Tyre Care (page 202).

Monthly checks

- Engine coolant level (engine cold). See Engine Coolant Check (page 178).
- Pipes, hoses and reservoirs for leaks.
- Power steering fluid level. See Power Steering Fluid Check (page 179).
- Air conditioning operation.
- Parking brake operation.
- Horn operation.
- Tightness of wheel nuts. See Technical Specifications (page 209).

OPENING AND CLOSING THE BONNET

Opening the bonnet

1. Pull the lever under the instrument panel. For item location: See At a Glance (page 3).
2. Raise the bonnet slightly.
3. Move the catch towards the left-hand side of the vehicle.
4. Open the bonnet.

5. Support it with the strut.

**Closing the bonnet**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOTE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Make sure that the bonnet is closed properly.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lower the bonnet and allow it to drop from under its own weight for the last 20 - 30 centimetres (8 - 11 inches).
## Maintenance

### UNDER BONNET OVERVIEW - MZI 2.5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Engine coolant reservoir cap. See Engine Coolant Check (page 178).</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Brake and clutch fluid reservoir cap. See Brake and Clutch Fluid Check (page 179).</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Engine oil filler cap. See Engine Oil Check (page 177).</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Engine oil dipstick. See Engine Oil Check (page 177).</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Engine junction box. See Fuses (page 159).</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Vehicle Identification Plate. See Vehicle identification (page 210).</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>Battery. See Vehicle battery (page 190).</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Power steering fluid reservoir cap. See Power Steering Fluid Check (page 179).</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Air Cleaner.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>Washer fluid reservoir cap. See Washer Fluid Check (page 181).</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are coloured for easy identification.
Maintenance

UNDER BONNET OVERVIEW - MZ-CD 2.2

▼RHD

![Diagram of engine components labeled A to K]

E131930
Maintenance

LHD

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>Engine coolant reservoir cap. See Engine Coolant Check (page 178).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Brake and clutch fluid reservoir cap. See Brake and Clutch Fluid Check (page 179).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Engine oil dipstick¹. See Engine Oil Dipstick (page 176).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Engine oil filler cap¹. See Engine Oil Check (page 177).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Fuel filter water trap. See Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap (page 180).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Engine junction box. See Fuses (page 159).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>Vehicle Identification Plate. See Vehicle identification (page 210).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Battery. See Vehicle battery (page 190).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Power steering fluid reservoir cap. See Power Steering Fluid Check (page 179).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>Washer fluid reservoir cap. See Washer Fluid Check (page 181).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>Air Cleaner.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are coloured for easy identification.
Maintenance

UNDER BONNET OVERVIEW - MZ-CD 3.2 I5

▼RHD
Maintenance

▼ LHD

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Engine coolant reservoir cap. See Engine Coolant Check (page 178).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Brake and clutch fluid reservoir cap. See Brake and Clutch Fluid Check (page 179).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Engine oil dipstick(^1). See Engine Oil Dipstick (page 176).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Engine oil filler cap(^1). See Engine Oil Check (page 177).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Fuel filter water trap. See Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap (page 180).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Engine junction box. See Fuses (page 159).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>Vehicle Identification Plate. See Vehicle identification (page 210).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Battery. See Vehicle battery (page 190).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Power steering fluid reservoir cap. See Power Steering Fluid Check (page 179).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>Washer fluid reservoir cap. See Washer Fluid Check (page 181).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>Air Cleaner.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are coloured for easy identification.
Maintenance

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - MZI 2.5

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - MZ-CD 2.2/MZ-CD 3.2 I5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>MIN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>MAX</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>MIN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>MAX</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ENGINE OIL CHECK

⚠️ CAUTION
Do not use oil additives or other engine treatments. Under certain conditions, they could damage the engine.

NOTE
The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5000 kilometres (3000 miles).

◀ Checking the oil level

⚠️ CAUTION
Make sure that the level is between the MIN and the MAX marks.

NOTE
- Check the level before starting the engine.
- Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
- Oil expands when it is hot. The level may therefore extend a few millimetres beyond the MAX mark.

Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint free cloth. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level. If the level is at the MIN mark, top up immediately.

▼ Topping up

⚠️ WARNING
- Only top up when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.
- Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

Remove the filler cap.

⚠️ CAUTION
Do not top up further than the MAX mark.

Top up with fluid that meets the Mazda specification. See Technical Specifications (page 182). Replace the filler cap. Turn it until you feel a strong resistance.
Maintenance

ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

▼Checking the coolant level

⚠️ WARNING

Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your doctor.

⚠️ CAUTION

Make sure that the level is between the MIN and the MAX marks.

NOTE

Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may therefore extend beyond the MAX mark.

If the level is at the MIN mark, top up immediately.

▼Topping up

⚠️ WARNING

• Only top up when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.
• Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.
• Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is hot. Wait for the engine to cool down.
• Undiluted coolant is flammable and may ignite if spilt on a hot exhaust.

⚠️ CAUTION

• In an emergency, you can add just water to the cooling system to reach a vehicle service station. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
• Prolonged use of incorrect dilution of the coolant can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure will escape slowly as you unscrew the cap.

⚠️ CAUTION

Do not top up further than the MAX mark.

Top up with a 50/50 mixture of coolant and water using fluid that meets the Mazda specification. See Technical Specifications (page 182).
Maintenance

**POWER STEERING FLUID CHECK**

⚠️ **WARNING**

Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your doctor.

⚠️ **CAUTION**

Make sure that the level is between the MIN and the MAX marks.

If the level is at the MIN mark, top up immediately.

▼ **Topping up**

Remove the filler cap.

⚠️ **CAUTION**

Do not top up further than the MAX mark.

Top up with fluid that meets the Mazda specification. See **Technical Specifications** (page 182).

**BRAKE AND CLUTCH FLUID CHECK**

⚠️ **WARNING**

- Use of any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid may reduce brake efficiency and not meet Mazda's performance standards.
- Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your doctor.
- If the level is at the MIN mark, have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

**NOTE**

- Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage and possible failure.
- The brake and the clutch systems are supplied from the same reservoir.

Top up with fluid that meets the Mazda specification. See **Technical Specifications** (page 182).
Maintenance

DRAINING THE FUEL FILTER WATER TRAP

WARNING
Do not dispose of diesel in household refuse or the public sewage system. Use your local authorised waste disposal facilities.

NOTE
- Only add fuel that meets the Mazda specification. See Fuel Quality (page 118).
- The in-tank pump will turn off automatically after approximately 40 seconds.

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Connect and secure a suitable hose on the filter drain plug.
3. Route the other end of the hose to the suitable container.
4. Loosen the drain plug by approximately 1.5 turns.
5. Switch the ignition on to activate the in-tank pump.
6. Drain the water till it is replaced by a clean diesel fuel.
7. Switch the ignition off.
8. Tighten the drain plug and remove the hose.
9. Start the engine and check for leaks.

NOTE
The water-in-fuel indicator lamp will go out after approximately 2 seconds, with the engine running.
WASHER FLUID CHECK

Top up the washer fluid reservoir when the washer fluid level indicator is on. See Warning Lamps and Indicators* (page 74).

When topping up, use a mixture of washer fluid and water to help prevent freezing in cold weather and improve the cleaning capability. We recommend that you use only high quality washer fluid.

*Some models.
Maintenance

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Vehicle fluids

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lubricant</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil - Diesel (for markets with low sulphur content less than 350 ppm)</td>
<td>ACEA A5/B5 (preferred), A3/B3, SAE 5W-30 (preferred), 5W-40, 10W-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil - Diesel (for markets with high sulphur content equal and greater than 350 ppm)</td>
<td>ACEA E5-99, API CH-4 or higher, SAE 10W-30, 5W-40, 10W-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil - Petrol</td>
<td>API SM, ILSAC GF-4, SAE 5W-20, 5W-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine coolant</td>
<td>L405F (orange)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission fluid</td>
<td>Mercon® LV (*)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission oil (6-speed)</td>
<td>BOT350-M3 (*)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission oil (5-speed)</td>
<td>API GL-4 or GL-5 75W-90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transfer case oil</td>
<td>Mercon® LV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front differential oil</td>
<td>API GL-5, SAE 80W-90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear differential oil</td>
<td>API GL-5, SAE 75W-140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power steering fluid</td>
<td>Mercon® LV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake/clutch fluid</td>
<td>DOT-3 or DOT-4 that are labeled FMVSS116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A/C refrigerant</td>
<td>R-134A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A/C compressor oil</td>
<td>Polyalkylene Glycol</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(*) Do not mix another type of fluid, otherwise physical failure may occur.

Capacities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variant</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Capacity in Litres (gallons)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>Power assisted steering fluid</td>
<td>1.2 (0.26)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>Windscreen washer system</td>
<td>5.5 (1.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>Fuel tank</td>
<td>80 (17.60)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission (dry)</td>
<td>Transmission fluid</td>
<td>10.5 (2.31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission (wet)</td>
<td>Transmission fluid</td>
<td>9 (1.97)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission (5MT)</td>
<td>Transmission fluid</td>
<td>1.7 (0.37)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission (6MT)</td>
<td>Transmission fluid</td>
<td>2.7 (0.59)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MZ-CD 2.2</td>
<td>Engine oil - with filter</td>
<td>8.6 (1.89)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MZ-CD 2.2 (MT)</td>
<td>Cooling system</td>
<td>11.5 (2.53)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MZ-CD 2.2 (AT)</td>
<td>Cooling system</td>
<td>11.9 (2.62)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MZ-CD 3.2 I5</td>
<td>Engine oil - with filter</td>
<td>9.75 (2.14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MZ-CD 3.2 I5 (MT)</td>
<td>Cooling system</td>
<td>12.9 (2.84)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MZ-CD 3.2 I5 (AT)</td>
<td>Cooling system</td>
<td>13.3 (2.93)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MZI 2.5</td>
<td>Engine oil - with filter</td>
<td>6.7 (1.47)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MZI 2.5</td>
<td>Cooling system</td>
<td>11.0 (2.42)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

NOTE

After the prescribed period, continue to follow the described maintenance at the recommended intervals.

Emission control and related systems
The ignition and fuel systems are highly important to the emission control system and to efficient engine operation. Don't tamper with them.
All inspections and adjustments must be made by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
# Maintenance

## Schedule

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maintenance Interval</th>
<th>Number of months or kilometres, whichever comes first</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>×1000 km</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PETROL ENGINE</td>
<td>Engine valve clearance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Engine oil*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Engine oil filter*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spark plugs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fuel filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Evaporative system (if installed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIESEL ENGINE</td>
<td>Engine oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Engine oil filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fuel system (Drain water)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fuel filter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Maintenance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maintenance Interval</th>
<th>Number of months or kilometres, whichever comes first</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>×1000 km</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PETROL and DIESEL ENGINE</td>
<td>Replace every 250,000 km or 10 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive belts*3</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timing chain and tensioner</td>
<td>Replace at first 250,000 km or 10 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine coolant</td>
<td>Replace every 250,000 km or 10 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air filter*4</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel lines and hoses</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery condition (for leak and corrosion)</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake lines, hoses and connections</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake fluid*5</td>
<td>R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking brake</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power brake unit (Brake booster) and hoses</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disc brakes*6</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drum brakes*6</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power steering fluid, lines, hoses and connections</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering operation and linkages*6</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clutch</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission fluid*7</td>
<td>Replace every 250,000 km or 10 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission fluid*7</td>
<td>Replace every 250,000 km or 10 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear differential (4X2)</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear differential oil (4X2)*7</td>
<td>Replace every 250,000 km or 10 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front and rear differential (4X4)</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front and rear differential oil (4X4)*7</td>
<td>Replace every 250,000 km or 10 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transfer (4X4)</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transfer oil (4X4)*7</td>
<td>Replace every 250,000 km or 10 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front and rear suspension and ball joints</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheel bearing lateral play (front) and axial play (rear)</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driveshaft dust boots (for 4X4)</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exhaust system and heat shields</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bolts and nuts on chassis and body</td>
<td>T</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Maintenance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maintenance Interval</th>
<th>Number of months or kilometres, whichever comes first</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>×1000 km</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body condition (for rust, corrosion and perforation)</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hinges and catches</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat belts, buckles and stalks</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cabin air filter (if installed)</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyre rotation<em>8</em>9</td>
<td>Rotate every 10,000 km</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyres (including spare tyre) (with inflation pressure adjustment)*9</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Chart symbols:**

- **I:** Inspect: Inspect and clean, repair, adjust, fill up, or replace if necessary.
- **R:** Replace
- **C:** Clean
- **D:** Drain
- **T:** Tighten
- **L:** Lubricate

**Remarks:**

*1 If the vehicle is operated primarily under any of the following conditions, replace the engine oil and oil filter more often than the recommended intervals.
   a) Short trips of less than 16 km when outside temperatures remain below freezing
   b) Extensive idling, such as police, taxi or door-to-door delivery use
   c) Operating off-road such as unpaved or dust covered roads
   d) Towing a trailer, using a camper (caravan), roof-top carrier or carrying maximum loads (e.g. heavy duty commercial use)

*2 For 2.2 L/3.2 L diesel engines, replace the engine oil and oil filter as indicated below:
   A. Countries whose diesel fuel contents extremely high sulphur equal or greater than 5000 ppm: Every 5,000 km or 3 months
   B. Countries whose diesel fuel contents sulphur less than 5000 ppm: Every 10,000 km or 6 months

   For engine oil, either ACEA E5-99 or API CH-4 or later should be used for applying the said intervals. If not, apply half of the interval.

*3 Also inspect and adjust the power steering and air conditioner drive belts, if installed.

   If the vehicle is operated primarily under any of the following conditions, inspect the drive belts more often than the recommended intervals.
   a) Short trips of less than 16 km when outside temperatures remain below freezing
   b) Extensive idling, such as police, taxi or door-to-door delivery use
   c) Operating off-road such as unpaved or dust covered roads
   d) Towing a trailer, using a camper (caravan), roof-top carrier or carrying maximum loads (e.g. heavy duty commercial use)

*4 If the vehicle is operated in very dusty or sandy areas, clean the air filter at every 5,000 km or 3 months.

*5 If the brakes are used extensively (for example, continuous hard driving or mountain driving) or if the vehicle is operated in extremely humid climates, replace the brake fluid annually.

*6 If the vehicle is operated primarily under any of the following conditions, inspect the these items more often than the recommended intervals.
   a) Driving on bumpy roads, gravel roads, snowy roads or dirt roads
   b) Driving uphill and downhill frequently
   c) Repeated short-distance driving
**Maintenance**

*7 If this component(s) has been submerged in water, the fluid/oil should be replaced.
*8 If the vehicle is operated primarily under any of the following conditions, rotate the tyres more often than the recommended intervals.
   a) Driving on bumpy roads, gravel roads, snowy roads or dirt roads
   b) Driving uphill and downhill frequently
   c) Repeated short-distance driving
   d) On roads having many roundabouts
*9 The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) initialization must be performed so that the system operates normally (if equipped).
Vehicle Care

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

⚠️ WARNING
If you use a car wash with a waxing cycle, make sure that you remove the wax from the windscreen.

⚠️ CAUTION
- Prior to using a car wash facility check the suitability of it for your vehicle.
- Some car wash installations use water at high pressure. This could damage certain parts of your vehicle.
- Remove the aerial before using an automatic car wash.
- Switch the heater blower off to prevent contamination of the fresh air filter.

We recommend that you wash your vehicle with a sponge and lukewarm water containing a car shampoo.

▼ Cleaning the headlamps

⚠️ CAUTION
- Do not scrape the headlamp lenses or use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.
- Do not wipe the headlamps when they are dry.

▼ Cleaning the rear window

⚠️ CAUTION
Do not scrape the inside of the rear window or use abrasives or chemical solvents to clean it.

Use a clean, lint free cloth or a damp chamois leather to clean the inside of the rear window.

▼ Cleaning the chrome trim

⚠️ CAUTION
Do not use abrasives or chemical solvents. Use soapy water.

▼ Body paintwork preservation

⚠️ CAUTION
- Do not polish your vehicle in strong sunshine.
- Do not allow polish to touch plastic surfaces. It could be difficult to remove.
- Do not apply polish to the windscreen or rear window. This could cause the wipers to become noisy and they may not clear the window properly.

We recommend that you wax the paintwork once or twice a year.
Vehicle Care

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

▼ Seat belts

⚠️ WARNING

- Do not use abrasives, or chemical solvents to clean them.
- Do not allow moisture to penetrate the seat belt retractor mechanism.

Clean the seat belts with interior cleaner or water applied with a soft sponge. Let the seat belts dry naturally, away from artificial heat.

▼ Instrument cluster screens, LCD screens, radio screens

⚠️ WARNING

Do not use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.

▼ Rear windows

⚠️ CAUTION

- Do not use any abrasive materials to clean the interior of the rear windows.
- Do not install stickers or labels to the interior of the rear windows.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

⚠️ CAUTION

Remove apparently harmless looking substances from the paintwork immediately (e.g. bird droppings, tree resins, insect remains, tar spots, road salt and industrial fall out).

You should repair paintwork damage caused by stones from the road or minor scratches as soon as possible. A choice of products is available from your Authorised Mazda Repairer. Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.
Vehicle battery

JUMP-STARTING THE VEHICLE

⚠️ CAUTION
- Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.
- Always use booster leads with insulated clamps and adequate size lead.
- Do not disconnect the battery from the vehicle's electrical system.

▼ To connect the booster leads

1. Position the vehicles so that they do not touch one another.
2. Switch off the engine and any electrical equipment.
3. Connect the positive (+) terminal of vehicle B with the positive (+) terminal of vehicle A (cable C).
4. Connect the negative (-) terminal of vehicle B to the ground connection of vehicle A (cable D). See Battery connection points (page 191).

⚠️ CAUTION
- Do not connect to the negative (-) terminal of the flat battery.
- Make sure that the leads are clear of any moving parts.

▼ To start the engine

1. Run the engine of vehicle B at moderately high speed.
2. Start the engine of vehicle A.
3. Run both vehicles for a minimum of three minutes before disconnecting the leads.

⚠️ CAUTION
Do not switch on the headlamps when disconnecting the leads. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

Disconnect the leads in the reverse order.

A | Flat battery vehicle
---|------------------
B | Booster battery vehicle
C | Positive connection lead
D | Negative connection lead

190
Vehicle battery

**BATTERY CONNECTION POINTS**

**CAUTION**
Do not connect to the negative (-) terminal of the flat battery.

---

**BATTERY WARNING SYMBOLS**

- **Battery labels**
  - No smoking, no naked flames, no sparks.
  - Shield the eyes.
  - Keep away from children.
  - Corrosive.
  - Note operating instructions.
  - Explosive gas.
Vehicle battery

INFORMATION FOR USERS ON COLLECTION AND DISPOSAL OF OLD EQUIPMENT AND USED BATTERIES

When disposing your old battery, please refer to the information as follows.

▼ Information on Disposal

If you wish to discard old products and used batteries, please contact your local authorities, your waste disposal service or the point of sales where you purchased the items, and ask for the correct method of disposal.
Wheels and Tyres

GENERAL INFORMATION

⚠️ CAUTION

- Use only approved wheel and tyre sizes. Using other sizes could damage the vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid.
- If you change the diameter of the tyres from that fitted at the factory, the speedometer may not display the correct speed. Take the vehicle to your repairer to have the engine management system reprogrammed.
- If you intend to change the size of the wheels from that fitted at the factory, check the suitability with your repairer.
- Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tyres are replaced on your vehicle.
- The two front tyres or two rear tyres should generally be replaced as a pair.
- The tyre pressure sensors mounted in the wheels are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.
- The use of wheels or tyres not recommended by Mazda Motor Company may affect the operation of your tyre pressure monitoring system.
- If the tyre pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, the system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tyre might be incompatible with your tyre pressure monitoring system, or some component of the system may be damaged.

NOTE

Check your tyre pressures regularly to optimise fuel economy.

A decal with tyre pressure data is located in the driver's door opening at the B-pillar. Check and set the tyre pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive the vehicle and when the tyres are cold.
Wheels and Tyres

CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

▼ Locking wheel nuts

You can obtain a replacement locking wheel nut key and replacement locking wheel nuts from your repairer using the reference number certificate.

▼ Vehicle jack

**WARNING**

- *The vehicle jack supplied with your vehicle should only be used when changing a wheel in emergency situations.*
- *Before using the vehicle jack, check that it is not damaged or deformed and that the thread is lubricated and free from foreign matter.*
- *Never place anything between the jack and the ground, or the jack and the vehicle.*

It is recommended to use a workshop type hydraulic jack for changing between summer and winter tyres.

**NOTE**

Use a jack with a minimum lifting capacity of one tonne (one ton) and a lifting plate with a minimum diameter of 80 millimetres (3.1 inches).

The jack, wheel brace, and jack handle are located in the cab.

1. Fold the LH seatback forward.
2. Remove the locking strap and remove the tools.
3. Fold the RH seatback forward.
4. Loosen the jack, remove the bolt and remove the jack.
Wheels and Tyres

Freestyle cab

1. Pull the release strap.
2. Remove the rear seats.
3. Remove the cover and loosen the jack.
4. Remove the bolt.
5. Remove the jack.
6. Remove the tools.
Wheels and Tyres

Double cab

1. Lift the release strap.
2. Lower the seatback.
3. Remove the locking strap.
4. Loosen the jack and remove the bolt.
5. Remove the jack.

Spare wheel

NOTE

Your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

1. Assemble the handle.
2. Fully insert the jack handle into the guide hole. Turn anti-clockwise until the wheel rests on the ground, and there is slack in the lead.

3. Pass the bracket and lead through the wheel opening.
Wheels and Tyres

▼ Jacking and lifting points

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Emergency use only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Maintenance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CAUTION**

Use only the specified jacking points. If you use other positions, you may damage the body, steering, suspension, engine, braking system or the fuel lines.
Wheels and Tyres
Wheels and Tyres

▼ Removing a road wheel

⚠️ WARNING

- Park your vehicle in such a position that neither the traffic nor you are hindered or endangered.
- Turn on the hazard warning flasher.
- Set up a warning triangle.
- Make sure that the vehicle is on firm, level ground with the wheels pointing straight ahead.
- Switch off the ignition and apply the parking brake.
- If your vehicle has a manual transmission, select first or reverse gear. If it has an automatic transmission, select park.
- Have the passengers leave the vehicle.
- Always secure the diagonally opposite wheel with an appropriate block or wheel chock when changing a wheel.
- Only use the vehicle jack to change a wheel. Never work underneath the vehicle when it is supported only by the jack.
- Make sure that the jack is vertical to the jacking point and the base is flat on the ground.

⚠️ CAUTION

Do not lay alloy wheels face down on the ground, this will damage the paint.

NOTE

Three handles need to be assembled when jacking the rear of the vehicle.

1. Assemble the jack handle.
2. Slacken the wheel nuts.
3. Jack up the vehicle until the tyre is clear of the ground.
4. Unscrew and remove the wheel nuts and take off the wheel.
Wheels and Tyres

Installing a road wheel

**WARNING**

- Use only approved wheel and tyre sizes. Using other sizes could damage the vehicle and will void the warranty. See Technical Specifications (page 209).
- Do not fit run flat tyres on vehicles that were not originally fitted with them. Please contact your repairer for more details regarding compatibility.
- Make sure that there is no lubrication (grease or oil) on the threads or the interface between wheel studs and nuts.
- Have the tightening torque of the wheel nuts and the tyre pressure checked as soon as possible.

**CAUTION**

Do not install alloy wheels using wheel nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

**NOTE**

The wheel nuts of alloy wheels and spoked steel wheels can also be used for the steel spare wheel for a short time (maximum two weeks).

1. Install the wheel.
2. Install the wheel nuts finger tight.
3. Install the locking wheel nut key.
4. Partially tighten the wheel nuts in the sequence shown.
5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack.
6. Fully tighten the wheel nuts in the sequence shown. See Technical Specifications (page 209).
7. Make sure that the projection of the cap is positioned on the same position as the projection of the hub.

**WARNING**

Have the wheel nuts checked for tightness and the tyre pressure checked as soon as possible.

**NOTE**

If the spare wheel is different in size or construction to the road wheels, have this replaced as soon as possible.
Wheels and Tyres

▶ Stowing the wheel

⚠️ CAUTION

Do not raise the spare wheel carrier without the wheel attached. Damage can occur to the winch mechanism if lowered without a wheel attached.

1. Place the wheel flat on the ground, so the outside of the wheel faces down. Tilt the bracket, and pass it and the lead through the centre opening in the wheel.

2. Fully insert the flat end of the wheel brace into the guide hole and turn clockwise.

3. Stow the wheel brace, jack, and jack handle away.

TYRE CARE

To make sure the front and rear tyres of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tyres as per the graphic at regular intervals of 10 000 km (6 000 miles).

⚠️ WARNING

If the tyre label shows different tyre pressures for the front and rear tyres and the vehicle is equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system, then the settings for the system sensors need to be updated. Always perform the system reset procedure after tyre rotation. If the system is not reset, it may not provide a low tyre pressure warning when necessary. See the tyre pressure monitoring system reset procedure in this chapter.

⚠️ CAUTION

Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tyres when you are parking.
If you have to mount a kerb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the kerb. Examine the tyres regularly for cuts, foreign objects and uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

**Limited-Slip Axle**

This axle provides added traction on slippery surfaces, particularly when one wheel is on a poor traction surface. Under normal conditions, the limited slip axle functions like a standard rear axle. The axle may exhibit a slight noise or vibration in tight turns with low vehicle speed. This is normal behaviour and indicates the axle is working.

---

**USING WINTER TYRES**

⚠️ **CAUTION**

Make sure that you use the correct wheel nuts for the type of wheel the winter tyres are fitted to.

If winter tyres are used, make sure that the tyre pressures are correct. See **Technical Specifications** (page 209).
Wheels and Tyres

USING SNOW CHAINS

⚠️ WARNING

- Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.

⚠️ CAUTION

If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

NOTE

- The ABS will continue to operate normally.
- Tighten the snow chains after 1 km (0.5 miles).

Only use small link snow chains. Only use snow chains on the rear wheels. On 4-wheel drive vehicles, inflate the rear tyres to the maximum pressure permissible. See Technical Specifications (page 209).

TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM*

⚠️ WARNING

- The tyre pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tyre pressures. You should periodically check tyre pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tyre pressures could increase the risk of tyre failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

You must check the tyre pressures (including the spare tyre where applicable) every two weeks when the tyres are cold.

You must inflate the tyres to the correct pressure. Refer to Wheels and Tyres on page 193. The tyre pressures are also on the tyre inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar).
As a driver assistance feature, your vehicle has a tyre pressure monitoring system. A warning lamp will illuminate when one or more of the tyres are significantly under-inflated. If the low tyre pressure warning lamp illuminates, you should stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, check the tyres and inflate them to the correct pressure.

Driving on under-inflated tyres can:

- Cause them to overheat.
- Lead to tyre failure.
- Reduce fuel efficiency.
- Reduce tyre life.
- Affect vehicle handling or stopping ability.

The system is not a substitute for correct tyre maintenance.

You must maintain the correct tyre pressures, even if low tyre pressure has not illuminated the warning lamp.

The tyre pressure monitoring system has a system malfunction indicator to warn you when the system is not operating correctly. The malfunction indicator and low tyre pressure warning lamp have a combined function. When the system detects a malfunction, the warning lamp will flash for approximately one minute and then remain illuminated. This sequence will occur every time you switch the ignition on while the malfunction remains. The system has detected a fault that requires service.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressures. A malfunction may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of a replacement tyre or wheel that prevents the system from functioning correctly. Always check the tyre pressure monitoring system malfunction warning after replacing one or more tyres or wheels on your vehicle. Make sure the replacement tyres or wheels allow the system to continue to function correctly.

See When the Temporary Spare Tyre is Installed in this section.

▼How Temperature Affects the Tyre Pressures

Under normal driving conditions tyre pressures may increase by up to 0.3 bar (0.4 psi) from a cold start situation.

If the vehicle is stationary overnight and the temperature is significantly lower than the daytime temperature, tyre pressures may decrease by up to 0.2 bar (0.3 psi) when there is a drop in the ambient temperature of 17 °C (63 °F) or more. The system detects this pressure decrease as being significantly below the correct inflation pressure and the warning lamp illuminates.
Wheels and Tyres

▼Changing Tyres With a Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

You should always have tyres serviced by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

NOTE

Each road wheel and tyre is fitted with a tyre pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tyre assembly cavity. The pressure sensor attaches to the valve stem. The tyre covers the pressure sensor and it is not visible unless the tyre is removed. Take care when changing the tyre to avoid damaging the sensor.

▼Understanding the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

You must maintain the correct tyre pressures, even if low tyre pressure has not illuminated the warning lamp.

The system measures the pressure in the road tyres and displays a warning lamp in the instrument cluster when a low pressure is detected. Refer to WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS on page 74.

The system detects this lower pressure as being significantly below the correct inflation pressure and the warning lamp illuminates.

**When the Temporary Spare Tyre is Installed**

If you need to replace a road wheel and tyre with the temporary spare wheel, the system will continue to identify a defect. This is to remind you to repair the damaged road wheel and tyre and refit the repaired road wheel and tyre assembly to your vehicle. To restore the correct operation of the system, you must have the repaired road wheel and tyre assembly refitted to your vehicle.

**When You Believe the System is Not Operating Correctly**

The main function of the system is to warn you when the tyre pressures are low. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of operating correctly. See the following chart for information concerning the system:

**When Inflating the Tyres**

When inflating the tyres the system may not respond immediately to the air added to the tyres.
System Warning Lamps

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning lamp</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Solid warning lamp                               | Tyre(s) under-inflated                          | 1. Make sure tyres are at the correct pressure. See Wheels and Tyres (page 193). The tyre pressures are also on the tyre inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar).  
2. After inflating the tyres to the correct pressure you must carry out the tyre pressure monitoring system reset procedure. See Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure in this chapter. |
| Spare tyre in use                                |                                                  | Repair the damaged road wheel and tyre and refit the repaired road wheel and tyre assembly to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system. |
| Tyre pressure monitoring system malfunction      |                                                  | If the tyres are correctly inflated and the spare tyre is not in use but the light remains on, the system has detected a fault that requires service. |
| Solid warning lamp initially followed by a flashing warning lamp | Spare tyre in use                              | Repair the damaged road wheel and tyre and refit the repaired road wheel and tyre assembly to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system. |
|                                                  | Tyre pressure monitoring system malfunction     | If the tyres are correctly inflated and the spare tyre is not in use but the light remains on, the system has detected a fault that requires service. |

If the Warning Lamp is On

1. Check each tyre to verify that none are flat.
2. If one or more tyres are flat, repair as necessary.
3. Check the tyre pressures and inflate all the tyres to the correct pressure.
4. Carry out the tyre pressure monitoring system reset procedure.

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure

Overview
You must carry out the system reset procedure after each tyre replacement or adjustment of the tyre pressures.

To maintain your vehicle load carrying capability, your vehicle requires different tyre pressures in the front tyres compared to the rear tyres.

The system illuminates the warning lamp at different pressures for the front and rear tyres.

The tyres need to be periodically rotated to provide consistent performance and maximum tyre life, the system needs to know when the tyres have been rotated to determine which set of tyres are on the front and rear axles. With this information, the system can detect and correctly warn of low tyre pressures.
Wheels and Tyres

Carrying Out the System Reset Procedure

1. Check the tyre pressures and inflate all the tyres to the correct pressure.

2. Press and hold the tyre pressure monitor reset switch for 3 seconds. The warning indicator blinks 3 times to acknowledge the reset procedure was successful.

If a flat tyre is still present after you perform the tyre pressure monitor reset procedure, the warning indicator remains illuminated in the instrument cluster. Make sure all of your tyres are inflated to the correct pressure before performing the reset procedure.

Type Approvals

For details on Tyre Pressure Monitoring Sensor Radio Frequency Compliance, refer to TYPE APPROVALS (page 304).
# Wheels and Tyres

## TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

### Wheel nut torque

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wheel type</th>
<th>Nm (lb-ft)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>103 (76.5)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Tyre pressures (cold tyres)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tyre size</th>
<th>Normal load</th>
<th>Economy</th>
<th>Full load</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Front</td>
<td>Rear</td>
<td>Front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bar (psi)</td>
<td>bar (psi)</td>
<td>bar (psi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>215/70 R16C 108/106*</td>
<td>2.4 (35)</td>
<td>2.4 (35)</td>
<td>2.6 (38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>255/70 R16 111T*</td>
<td>2.4 (35)</td>
<td>2.4 (35)</td>
<td>2.6 (38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>265/65 R17 112T*</td>
<td>2.4 (35)</td>
<td>2.4 (35)</td>
<td>2.6 (38)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Only fit snow chains to specified tyres.*
Vehicle identification

**VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE**

The vehicle identification number and maximum weights are shown on a plate located on the bottom of the passenger door aperture.

**VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER**

Depending on the build location of your vehicle, the stamped vehicle identification number can be found in the following locations.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Left-hand side of the instrument panel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Right-hand side beneath the front door on the chassis.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

#### ▼ Vehicle dimensions

**Regular cab**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Dimension Description</th>
<th>Dimension in mm (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Maximum length - excluding rear bumper (Without box)</td>
<td>5124 (201.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Maximum length - excluding rear bumper (With box)</td>
<td>5277 (207.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Maximum length - With underran protection (Without box)</td>
<td>5227 (205.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Maximum length - With underran protection (With box)</td>
<td>5277 (207.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Maximum length - including rear bumper</td>
<td>5365 (211.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Overall width - excluding exterior mirrors</td>
<td>1850 (72.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Overall height (4x2)</td>
<td>1703 (67.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Overall height (4x2* or 4x4)</td>
<td>1800 - 1806 (70.9 - 71.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Wheelbase</td>
<td>3220 (126.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Track - front and rear (4x2)</td>
<td>1590 (62.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Track - front and rear (4x4)</td>
<td>1560 (61.4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Vehicles with increased ride height*
Capacities and Specifications

4-door freestyle cab

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Dimension Description</th>
<th>Dimension in mm (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Maximum length - excluding rear bumper (Without box)</td>
<td>5124 (201.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Maximum length - excluding rear bumper (With box)</td>
<td>5277 (207.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Maximum length - With underran protection (Without box)</td>
<td>5227 (205.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Maximum length - With underran protection (With box)</td>
<td>5277 (207.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Maximum length - including rear bumper</td>
<td>5365 (211.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Overall width - excluding exterior mirrors</td>
<td>1850 (72.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Overall height (4x2)</td>
<td>1706 (67.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Overall height (4x4)</td>
<td>1804 - 1810 (71.0 - 71.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Wheelbase</td>
<td>3220 (126.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Track - front and rear (4x2)</td>
<td>1590 (62.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Track - front and rear (4x4)</td>
<td>1560 (61.4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1Depending on tyre size
## Capacities and Specifications

### Double cab

![Diagram of Double cab Mazda BT-50](image)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Dimension Description</th>
<th>Dimension in mm (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Maximum length - excluding rear bumper (Without box)</td>
<td>5124 (201.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Maximum length - excluding rear bumper (With box)</td>
<td>5277 (207.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Maximum length - With underran protection (Without box)</td>
<td>5227 (205.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Maximum length - With underran protection (With box)</td>
<td>5277 (207.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Maximum length - including rear bumper</td>
<td>5365 (211.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Overall width - excluding exterior mirrors</td>
<td>1850 (72.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Overall height (4x2)</td>
<td>1716 (67.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Overall height (4x2 * or 4x4)</td>
<td>1815-1821 (71.4 - 71.7)¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Wheelbase</td>
<td>3220 (126.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Track - front and rear (4x2)</td>
<td>1590 (62.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Track - front and rear (4x4)</td>
<td>1560 (61.4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹Depending on tyre size

*Vehicles with increased ride height
Capacities and Specifications

▼ Towing equipment dimensions

4x2
Capacities and Specifications

4x2 (vehicles with increased ride height) and 4x4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Dimension Description</th>
<th>Dimension in mm (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Attachment point - centre of tow ball (4x2)</td>
<td>124 ± 5 (4.8 ± 0.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Attachment point - centre of tow ball (4x2 or 4x4)</td>
<td>221.5 ± 5 (8.7 ± 0.2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Capacities and Specifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Dimension Description</th>
<th>Dimension in mm (inches)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Centre of tow ball - side member</td>
<td>588 (23.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Outside of side member</td>
<td>1176 (46.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Centre of tow ball - centre of 1st attachment point (4x2)</td>
<td>419 ± 5 (16.5 ± 0.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Centre of tow ball - centre of 1st attachment point (4x2* or 4x4)</td>
<td>363 ± 5 (14.3 ± 0.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Centre of tow ball - centre of 2nd attachment point (4x2)</td>
<td>442 ± 5 (17.4 ± 0.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Centre of tow ball - centre of 2nd attachment point (4x2* or 4x4)</td>
<td>386 ± 5 (15.2 ± 0.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Centre of tow ball - centre of 3rd attachment point (4x2)</td>
<td>542 ± 5 (21.3 ± 0.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Centre of tow ball - centre of 3rd attachment point (4x2* or 4x4)</td>
<td>486 ± 5 (19.1 ± 0.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>Centre of tow ball - centre of 4th attachment point (4x2)</td>
<td>785 ± 5 (30.9 ± 0.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>Centre of tow ball - centre of 4th attachment point (4x2* or 4x4)</td>
<td>728 ± 5 (28.7 ± 0.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Centre of tow ball - centre of 5th attachment point (4x2)</td>
<td>429 ± 5 (16.8 ± 0.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Centre of tow ball - centre of 5th attachment point (4x2* or 4x4)</td>
<td>373 ± 5 (14.7 ± 0.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>Centre of tow ball - centre of 6th attachment point (4x2)</td>
<td>504 ± 5 (19.8 ± 0.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>Centre of tow ball - centre of 6th attachment point (4x2* or 4x4)</td>
<td>448 ± 5 (17.6 ± 0.2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Vehicles with increased ride height

▼ Arab Gulf Cooperation Council

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Specification</th>
<th>MZI 2.5</th>
<th>MZ-CD 2.2</th>
<th>MZ-CD 3.2 15</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum engine power/revolution</td>
<td>122 kW/5,500 rpm, 110 kW/3,700 rpm, 147 kW/3,000 rpm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum engine torque/revolution</td>
<td>225 N·m/4,500 rpm, 375 N·m/1,500—2,500 rpm, 470 N·m/1,750—2,500 rpm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum speed</td>
<td>175 km/h (109 mph)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Form No.8FX5-EI-17DT
Press the relevant button on the unit bezel to access the system functions. This will take you into the selected mode.

\section*{One hour mode}
To conserve battery power, the system can be operated in one hour mode. If the ignition is off, press the ON/OFF button to switch the system on. The system will automatically switch off after one hour.

\section*{System notes}

\section*{WARNING}
- The indicated maximum speed may not be applicable to your vehicle. It is always your responsibility to control the vehicle, supervise any system and obey the correct speed limit.
- The front glass on the liquid crystal display may break if hit with a hard object. If the glass breaks, do not touch the liquid crystalline material. In case of contact with the skin, wash immediately with soap and water.
- The unit is a high grade laser product which uses an invisible laser beam. If this is handled incorrectly it can emit dangerous rays. Do not attempt to look through any openings in the unit.

\section*{CAUTION}
- Irregular shaped CDs and CDs with a scratch protection film or self adhesive labels attached should not be used. Warranty claims, where this type of disc is found to be inside an audio unit returned for repair, will not be accepted.
- Do not clean the unit with solvents or aerosol cleaning agents. Use only a damp cloth.
- Do not insert foreign objects into any of the unit disc drives or media card slots.
- Do not insert more than one disc into the unit disc drive.
- Use only 12 cm (4.7 inches) discs or 8 cm (3.1 inches) discs with a suitable adaptor.
- Do not attempt to open the unit. If the unit malfunctions consult your repairer.
- Improper use of settings and connections, other than those explained in this handbook, can damage the unit.
- Do not turn the ignition key or attempt to start the engine while the software is updating.

The system is recommended for use when the ignition key is turned to the accessory position or when the engine is running. If the system is used extensively when the engine is not running, care needs to be taken to avoid draining the battery.

\*Some models.
Navigation introduction

ROAD SAFETY *

⚠️ WARNING

- The system provides you with information designed to help you reach your destination quickly and safely.
- For reasons of safety, the driver should only programme the system when the vehicle is stationary.
- The system provides no assistance with respect to stop signs, traffic lights, areas under construction or other important safety information.
- Do not use the system until you have familiarised yourself with its operation.
- Only view the system display when driving conditions permit.

▼ Safety information

Read and follow all stated safety precautions. Failure to do so may increase your risk of collision and personal injury. Mazda Motor Corporation shall not be liable for any damages of any type arising from failure to follow these guidelines.

If detailed viewing of route instructions is necessary, pull off the road when it is safe to do so and park your vehicle.

Do not use the navigation system to locate emergency services.

To use the system as effectively and safely as possible, always use the latest navigation information. Your repairer will be able to assist with this.

* Some models.
**Vehicles with SD navigation system**

The system has a large range of features, yet is easy and intuitive to use. Route guidance is shown on the display screen. The screen provides full information for operating the system through the use of menus, text screens and map displays. Screen selections are made by scrolling through the menus using the up, down, left and right arrow buttons and pressing the OK button to activate the desired setting.

**Basic operation**

1. Press either the NAV or MENU button to enter the menu structure.
2. Use the up, down, left and right arrow buttons and scroll through the various selection lists.
3. Press the OK button to activate your selection.

**Selection lists**

Various screens are presented which offer a selection list of available options.

1. Select the option you require, or if it is not shown on the screen use the up and down arrow buttons to view the remainder of the selection list.
2. Press the OK button to confirm your selection.

**Alphanumeric keypad entry**

When it is necessary to enter an address, a keypad will appear prompting you to enter a postcode, city, or street.

1. Use the up, down, left and right arrow buttons to select the letter or number that you require.

**Route setting example**

**Navigation main screen**

- To select the navigation system, press the NAV button. The road safety caution will be displayed. To use the system, read the caution and press the OK button.

**Destination input screen**

- Use the up and down arrow buttons and scroll to Destination input.
- Press the OK button to activate your selection.

**NOTE**

- A list with several options is shown.
- Starting from the top, select the country followed by either the postcode if available or city and street name.
- Use the alphanumeric keypad and selection lists to select your address details.
- Once sufficient information has been entered, scroll to Start guidance and press the OK button to activate your selection.
Navigation Quick start

NOTE
If you only need to navigate to a city centre for example, full address details are not required.

- The route is now calculated and the screen returns to the main navigation screen with instructions on how to proceed.
- Follow the screen information and voice prompts to reach your destination.
Function buttons 1 to 4 are context dependent, and change according to the current unit mode. Descriptions for the functions are shown at the bottom of the screen display.

### Descriptions for function buttons 1-4

<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Descriptions for function buttons 1-4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Navigation unit overview

▼ Vehicles with SD navigation system

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Function 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Function 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Seek down. CD track selection. See Station tuning control (page 246). See Track selection (page 253).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>On/off and volume control.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Seek up. CD track selection. See Station tuning control (page 246). See Track selection (page 253).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Function 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>Function 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>OK.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Telephone keypad, navigation destination entry and station presets. See Using the telephone (page 266). See Station preset buttons (page 247).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>Clock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>Traffic announcement. See Traffic information control (page 248).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>Navigation arrows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Map.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Navigation unit overview**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>Information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>Door lock indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>Hazard warning flasher switch. See <strong>Hazard Warning Flashers</strong> (page 59).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>Door lock button. See <strong>Locking and Unlocking</strong> (page 38).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>Navigation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>Menu select.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>Phone menu. See <strong>Telephone</strong> (page 263).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>Auxiliary, USB and iPod select. See <strong>Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket</strong> (page 111). See <strong>Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket</strong> (page 260). See <strong>Connectivity</strong> (page 284).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>Radio and waveband select. See <strong>Audio unit operation</strong> (page 245).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>CD eject. See <strong>Compact disc player</strong> (page 253).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>CD select. See <strong>Compact disc player</strong> (page 253).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Navigation unit overview

LOADING THE NAVIGATION DATA *

Loading the navigation data

1. Load the navigation SD card into the aperture.
2. Press the NAV button. The road safety warning will be shown in the display.
3. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required feature.
4. Press the OK button to confirm your selection.

For map updates and system upgrades please refer to your repairer.

* Some models.
Most of the important settings for your navigation unit can be accessed via the MENU or NAV button. The following section describes the various options and how to use them.

For menu structures: See Information Displays (page 83).

**Menu structure - Information and entertainment display - Vehicles with navigation system**

**Route**
This feature allows you to customise the route to your specific journey requirements (for example continue route guidance, block specific sections of your route or select specific sections of a route).

**Destination input**
This feature allows you to enter your destination details (for example enter city names, enter street names or pick a place from a map).

**Traffic**
This feature allows you to customise how you receive traffic information (for example review and sort traffic messages, review your route or block parts of your route).

**Home address**
This feature allows you to start the route guidance to your home address or change the details of your home address.

**Last destinations**
This feature allows quick access to a history of previous destinations entered in the system. A detailed display will show the complete stored information including an overview map. Select the required repeat destination from the list.

**Favourites**
This feature allows you to customize a personal destination address book and assign user defined names to addresses and locations. A detailed display will show the complete stored information including an overview map. Select the required repeat destination from the list.

**Points of interest**
This feature allows you to customise the route to your specific journey requirements (for example select a museum on route or a specific point of interest near your destination).

**Tour planning**
This feature allows you to enter a number of different destinations and select the order in which you wish to visit them. You can also modify an existing tour or recall a previous tour. The system will automatically calculate and display your chosen journey.

**Store position**
This feature allows you to store and name your current position.

**Route options**
This feature allows you to customise the route to your specific journey requirements (for example select the fastest or most economical route or select a route that will avoid tunnels, seasonal roads and toll roads).
System settings

Special functions
This feature allows you to select GPS and system information or a demonstration of the system functionality.

Map display
This feature allows you to change the way the map screen is displayed (for example clean 2D and clean 3D view) and to customise display information for your journey (for example time to arrival and lane guidance).

Assistance options
This feature allows you to customise display information for your journey (for example signs, lanes and speed limits).

Personal data
This feature allows you to edit and delete personal data (for example your home address).

Reset all settings
This feature allows you to reset the navigation settings.

Audio settings

Adaptive volume
This feature allows you to adjust the volume level to compensate for engine and road speed noise. You can turn this on and off. See Automatic volume control (page 250).

Sound
This feature allows you to adjust the sound settings (for example bass and treble).

Nav audio mixing
This feature allows you to adjust the volume mix between the navigation voice output and audio source.

DSP settings
This feature allows you to customise speaker output relevant to seat positions. See Digital signal processing (DSP) (page 250).

DSP equaliser
This feature allows you to select the music category that most suits your listening preference. The audio output will change to enhance the particular style of music chosen. See Digital signal processing (DSP) (page 250).

News
This feature allows you to receive news bulletins from stations on the FM waveband or radio data system (RDS) and enhanced other network (EON) linked stations, in the same way as traffic information is provided. You can turn this on and off. See News broadcasts (page 251).

Alternative frequencies
This feature will search for and switch to the strongest station signal when moving from one transmission area to another. See Alternative frequencies (page 251).

RDS regional
This feature controls the behaviour of AF switching between regionally related networks of a parent broadcaster. See Regional mode (REG) (page 252).

Bluetooth®
This feature allows you to switch Bluetooth® on or off.
System settings

▼ Clock settings

Set time
This feature allows you to manually adjust the time.

Set date
This feature allows you to manually adjust the date, month and year.

GPS time
This feature allows you to, if in a suitable coverage area, automatically adjust the date and time using GPS.

Set time zone
This feature allows you select a specific time zone.

Summertime
This feature allows you set the system to adjust for seasonal time differences.

NOTE
GPS time must be selected.

24-hour mode
This feature allows you to adjust the system between 12 and 24-hour mode.
Navigation system

**ROUTE OPTIONS MENU**

You can set a number of options which alter the way a route is planned. Using the up, down, left and right arrow buttons, you can select from the list which road features are to be avoided or included in the route by turning the feature on or off.

**▼ Route**

**Eco**
This option will prioritise the most economical route to the destination.

**Fast**
This option will prioritise the fastest route to the destination.

**Short**
This option will prioritise the shortest route to the destination.

**Always ask**
Use this feature to make sure that you are always given the choice of route type selection for your journey.

**▼ Driver**

**Leisurely**
This option will prioritise the route for a leisurely driver to the destination.

**Normal**
This option will prioritise the route for a normal driver to the destination.

**Fast**
This option will prioritise the route for a fast driver to the destination.

**▼ Eco settings**

**Trailer**
Use this feature to change the economy settings of your journey relating to whether or not you are towing a trailer and if so the size of trailer being towed.

**Roof box**
Use this feature to change the economy settings of your journey relating to the use of a roof box.

**▼ Dynamic**

When switched on, and if the unit is receiving a valid traffic message channel (TMC) signal, the route will be automatically updated to take into account real time traffic incidents or congestion.

**NOTE**

This feature can be useful in avoiding delays or hold ups on journeys.

**▼ Motorway**

When switched on the system will look for motorways on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.

**NOTE**

This feature can be useful in avoiding delays or hold ups on journeys.

*Some models.*
Navigation system

▼ Ferry/motorail
When switched on the system will look for ferry crossings and motorail facilities on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.

▼ Toll
When switched on the system will look for toll roads on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.

▼ Seasonal roads
When switched on the system will look for seasonal roads on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.

NOTE
This feature can be useful in avoiding delays or hold ups on journeys.

▼ Toll sticker
When switched on the system will automatically select toll roads and update your route distance and timings.

ROUTE DISPLAYS *

▼ Map display
Press the MAP button for a map view. This view will show your current location with your vehicle in the centre shown as an arrow surrounded by a circle. The arrow will face in the direction of travel. The information on the top line gives the name of the current road, or the next road to take if a turn is approaching.
You can change the way the map is displayed by altering the zoom and orientation settings. Press the relevant function buttons to change the map scale and using the left and right arrow buttons zoom in or out. The current map scale is shown on the display.
Map scale settings may be set between 50 metres to 500 kilometres or 0.05 miles to 500 miles, with an auto setting to the far left. The auto setting continuously changes the map scale according to the road type being driven.

▼ Junction zoom
This feature will automatically increase the zoom on the map display at times when you are required to make a turn, or perform more complex manoeuvres. Shortly after the zoom scale will return to the previous level.
Select AUTO to activate junction zoom.

*Some models. 229
Navigation system

▼ Navigation display

After commencing a navigation route, the default screen is the main navigation screen:
Once an active route is underway, guidance will be given by on-screen information and voice prompts. Whichever audio source you wish to leave the unit in, basic turn by turn and distance information will remain on the screen in the form of a graphic inset. You do not need to leave the unit on the main navigation screen when you are navigating a route. Slightly more detailed information on your route may be available via the main navigation screen if required.

⚠️ WARNING

Do not rely on the screen prompts when navigating. Always listen to the navigation voice and take care not be distracted from the road ahead.
Traffic Message Channel

**PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION**

Traffic message channel (TMC) stations are broadcast on the FM waveband. TMC is a feature that receives traffic alerts which can be used to plan alternative routes and avoid hold ups.

**USING TMC**

Press the TA or TRAFFIC button to show the traffic menu page.

▼ Traffic announcement

Traffic announcement (TA) can be turned on or off via this menu. If switched on a TA indicator is shown in the information border of the status bar. Stations which broadcast on the FM waveband and carry traffic programmeme (TP) information are identified by TP shown in the screen display. With TA switched on the unit will respond to these announcements and interrupt music playback. After the announcement has ended music playback will resume.

▼ Ending traffic announcements

The unit will return to normal operation at the end of each traffic announcement. To end the announcement prematurely, press the TA, TRAFFIC, RADIO or CD button during the announcement.

▼ Using TMC messages

Select the required item to display a list of TMC messages. See General Information (page 83). This is only an overview display which gives very basic information. Select the message you require further information on and another screen will be displayed giving full message details on incident location etc. You may either select a view which shows messages only affecting your programmed route, or a view which shows all messages received. Press function button 1 to change the view.

*Some models.*
The road network is constantly changing due to new roads, changes in road classification, etc. Therefore, it is not always possible to exactly match the map data in the system to the current road network. Map information is regularly updated, but all areas are not necessarily covered to the same level of detail. Some roads, in particular private roads, may not be included on the database. To help with accuracy, always use the latest version navigation disc. Your repairer will be able to provide this.
Audio introduction

IMPORTANT AUDIO INFORMATION

⚠️ WARNING

- Due to technical incompatibility, recordable (CD-R) and rewritable (CD-RW) discs may not function correctly.
- These CD radio units will play compact discs that conform to the International Red Book standard audio specification. Copy protected CDs from some manufacturers do not conform to this standard and playback cannot be guaranteed.
- Dual format, dual sided discs (DVD Plus, CD-DVD format), adopted by the music industry, are thicker than normal CDs and consequently playback cannot be guaranteed, and jamming could occur. Irregular shaped CDs and CDs with a scratch protection film or self adhesive labels attached should not be used. Warranty claims, where this type of disc is found to be inside an audio unit returned for repair, will not be accepted.
- All CD units are designed to play commercially pressed 12 cm audio compact discs only.
- The audio unit may be damaged if unsuitable items like credit cards or coins are pushed inside the CD aperture.

▼ Audio unit labels

CLASS 1
LASER PRODUCT

CAUTION—INVISIBLE LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN
DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM OR
VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS

▼ Disc labels

Audio CD
Audio introduction

MP3

![Compact Disc](image1.png)

![Compact Disc](image2.png)
### Audio unit overview

**NOTE**

Units have an integrated multi function display situated above the CD aperture. This shows important information regarding control of your audio unit. Additionally, there are various icons placed around the display screen which light up when a function is active (for example CD, Radio or Aux.)

Type of audio unit and relevant multifunction display:
- **Type 2**: Base display
- **Type 3**: Large display
- **Type 4**: 5 inch NAV colour display

**Type 1**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>CD eject. See <strong>Compact disc player</strong> (page 253).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Volume control.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>CD Aperture.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>LCD display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Seek up. CD track select/Fast-rewind. See <strong>Station tuning control</strong> (page 246). See <strong>Track selection</strong> (page 253).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Menu select.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>On/off and mute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Seek down. CD track select/Fast-forward. See <strong>Station tuning control</strong> (page 246). See <strong>Track selection</strong> (page 253).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Radio and waveband select. See <strong>Audio unit operation</strong> (page 245).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>Scan and auto store. Play all tracks on CD.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>Station preset 6. Shuffle. See <strong>Station preset buttons</strong> (page 247).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>Station preset 5. Repeat. See <strong>Station preset buttons</strong> (page 247).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Station preset 4. Next folder. See <strong>Station preset buttons</strong> (page 247).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>Station preset 3. Previous folder. See <strong>Station preset buttons</strong> (page 247).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>Station preset 2. Scroll display. See <strong>Station preset buttons</strong> (page 247).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>Station preset 1. Back. See <strong>Station preset buttons</strong> (page 247).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>Select CD/Auxiliary. See <strong>Compact disc player</strong> (page 253). See <strong>Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket</strong> (page 111). See <strong>Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket</strong> (page 260).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

![Diagram of audio unit](image-url)
Audio unit overview

Type 2
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>CD eject. See Compact disc player (page 253).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>CD select. See Compact disc player (page 253).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Seek down. CD track selection. See Station tuning control (page 246). See Track selection (page 253).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>On/off and volume control.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Seek up. CD track selection. See Station tuning control (page 246). See Track selection (page 253).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Station presets. See Station preset buttons (page 247).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>OK.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Navigation arrows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>Door lock indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>Hazard warning flasher switch. See Hazard Warning Flashers (page 59).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Door lock button. See Locking and Unlocking (page 38).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>Menu select.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>Sound button. See Sound button (page 245).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>Auxiliary select. See Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket (page 111). See Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket (page 260).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>Radio and waveband select. See Audio unit operation (page 245).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Type 3**

![Diagram of audio unit control panel]

A  Descriptions for function buttons 1-4
Audio unit overview
Audio unit overview

Function buttons 1 to 4 are context dependent, and change according to the current unit mode. Descriptions for the functions are shown at the bottom of the screen display.

Type 4

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Function 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Function 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Seek down. CD track selection. See Station tuning control (page 246). See Track selection (page 253).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>On/off and volume control.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Seek up. CD track selection. See Station tuning control (page 246). See Track selection (page 253).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Function 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>Function 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>OK.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Telephone keypad and station presets. See Using the telephone (page 266). See Station preset buttons (page 247).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>Navigation arrows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>Traffic announcement. See Traffic information control (page 248).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>Information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Door lock indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>Hazard warning flasher switch. See Hazard Warning Flashers (page 59).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>Door lock button. See Locking and Unlocking (page 38).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>Sound button. See Sound button (page 245).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>Menu select.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>Phone menu. See Telephone (page 263).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>Auxiliary, USB and iPod select. See Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket (page 111). See Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket (page 260). See Connectivity (page 284).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>Radio and waveband select. See Audio unit operation (page 245).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>CD eject. See Compact disc player (page 253).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>CD select. See Compact disc player (page 253).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A Descriptions for function buttons 1-4

E104157
Audio unit overview

[Diagram of audio unit with labels A to J]
## Audio unit overview

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>Function 1.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Function 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Seek down. CD track selection. See Station tuning control (page 246). See Track selection (page 253).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>On/off and volume control.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Seek up. CD track selection. See Station tuning control (page 246). See Track selection (page 253).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Function 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>Function 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>OK.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Telephone keypad, navigation destination entry and station presets. See Using the telephone (page 266). See Station preset buttons (page 247).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>Clock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>Traffic announcement. See Traffic information control (page 248).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>Navigation arrows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Map.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>Information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>Door lock indicator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>Hazard warning flasher switch. See Hazard Warning Flashers (page 59).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>Door lock button. See Locking and Unlocking (page 38).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>Navigation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>Menu select.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>Phone menu. See Telephone (page 263).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>Auxiliary, USB and iPod select. See Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket (page 111). See Connectivity (page 284).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>Radio and waveband select. See Audio unit operation (page 245).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>CD eject. See Compact disc player (page 253).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>CD select. See Compact disc player (page 253).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Function buttons 1 to 4 are context dependent, and change according to the current unit mode. Descriptions for the functions are shown at the bottom of the screen display.
Audio system security

SECURITY CODE

Each unit incorporates a unique code that is linked to the vehicle identification number (VIN). The system will automatically check that the audio unit and vehicle match before allowing operation. If a security code message appears, please see your repairer.
Audio unit clock and date displays

SETTING THE CLOCK ON THE AUDIO UNIT

Changing the time

The clock can be set at any time when the system is in the one hour mode or the ignition switch is in the ACC or ON position.

NOTE

Type 2 and 3: The time can be adjusted using the hour and minute buttons on the screen.

To advance the hours, press the HOUR SET button. To advance the minutes, press the MINUTE SET button while the time is flashing.

NOTE

• Type 4: The time can be adjusted using the clock button on the audio control panel. See Audio unit overview (page 235).
• The time can be adjusted using the navigation arrow buttons on the audio control panel.

Type 1
• Press the MENU button.
• Rotate the VOLUME CONTROL to select the date/time.
• Short press the MENU button to enter date/time.
• Rotate the VOLUME CONTROL to select the hour set and enter.

Type 2 and 4
• Press the MENU button.
• Use the UP and DOWN arrow buttons to select the clock settings.
• Press OK or RIGHT arrow button to enter clock settings.
• Use UP and DOWN arrow button to select the set time.
• Use UP and DOWN arrow buttons to adjust hours.
• Use RIGHT and LEFT arrow buttons to scroll to the minutes.
• Use UP and DOWN arrow buttons to adjust minutes.
• Press OK button to save the new settings

Type 3
• Press the MENU button.
• Use the UP and DOWN arrow buttons to select the clock.
• Press OK or RIGHT arrow button to enter clock menu.
• Use UP and DOWN arrow button to select the set time.
Audio unit clock and date displays

- Use UP and DOWN arrow buttons to adjust hours.
- Use RIGHT and LEFT arrow buttons to scroll to the minutes.
- Use UP and DOWN arrow buttons to adjust minutes.
- Press OK button to save the new settings

**Exact hour adjustment**

You can set the time to the beginning of an hour using this feature.

- Press the CLOCK button for about two seconds until a beep is heard. The clock's current time will flash.
- Press the CLOCK button again and the time will be adjusted as follows:

**Example**

- current set time between 12:01 and 12:29 will change to 12:00 exactly.
- current set time between 12:30 and 12:59 will change to 1:00 exactly.

**NOTE**

If the power supply to the unit is interrupted (if the fuse blows or the vehicle's battery is disconnected), the clock will need to be reset.
Audio unit operation

ON/OFF CONTROL
Press the on/off control. This will also operate the unit for up to one hour with the ignition turned off. The radio will switch off automatically after one hour.

SOUND BUTTON
This will allow you to adjust the sound settings (for example bass and treble).

1. Press the sound button.

2. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required setting.

3. Use the left and right arrow buttons to make the necessary adjustment. The display indicates the level selected.

4. Press the OK button to confirm the new settings.
Audio unit operation

WAVEBAND BUTTON
Press the RADIO button to select from the wavebands available. The selector can also be used to return to radio reception when you have been listening to another source. Alternatively, press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands. Scroll to the required waveband and press OK.

STATION TUNING CONTROL

▼ Seek tuning
Select a waveband and briefly press one of the seek buttons. The unit will stop at the first station it finds in the direction you have chosen.

▼ Manual tuning

Type 1
1. Press the FM/AM button and then MANUAL TUNE.
2. Use the left and right arrow buttons to tune down or up the waveband in small increments or press and hold to increment quickly, until you find a station you want to listen to.

Type 2
1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select RADIO mode and then MANUAL TUNE.
3. Use the left and right arrow buttons to tune down or up the waveband in small increments or press and hold to increment quickly, until you find a station you want to listen to.
4. Press OK to continue listening to a station.

Type 3 and 4
1. Press function button 2.
2. Use the left and right arrow buttons to tune down or up the waveband in small increments or press and hold to increment quickly, until you find a station you want to listen to.
Audio unit operation

3. Press OK to continue listening to a station.

▼Scan tuning
Scan allows you to listen to a few seconds of each station detected.

Type 1
1. Press the FM/AM button.
2. Short press the SCAN/AS button, the radio will automatically scan up the selected waveband.
3. Short press the SCAN/AS button again to continue listening to a station.

Type 2
1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select RADIO mode and then SCAN.
3. Use the seek buttons to scan up or down the selected waveband.
4. Press OK to continue listening to a station.

Type 3 and 4
1. Press function button 3.
2. Use the seek buttons to scan up or down the selected waveband.
3. Press function button 3 again or OK to continue listening to a station.

STATION PRESET BUTTONS
This feature allows you to store your favourite stations so that they can be recalled by selecting the appropriate waveband and pressing one of the preset buttons.

1. Select a waveband.
2. Tune to the station required.
3. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. A progress bar and message will appear. When the progress bar completes the station has been stored. The audio unit will also mute momentarily as confirmation.

This can be repeated on each waveband and for each preset button.

NOTE
When you drive to another part of the country, FM stations that broadcast on alternative frequencies, and are stored on preset buttons, may be updated with the correct frequency and station name for that area.
Audio unit operation

### AUTOSTORE CONTROL

**NOTE**

This will store up to a maximum of the 10 strongest signals available, either from the AM or the FM waveband, and overwrite the previously stored stations. It can also be used to store stations manually in the same way as other wavebands.

#### Type 1

1. In RADIO mode, long press the SCAN/AS button.
2. When the search is complete, sound is restored and the strongest signals are stored on the Autostore presets.

#### Type 2, 3 and 4

1. Press and hold function button 1 or the RADIO button.
2. When the search is complete, sound is restored and the strongest signals are stored on the Autostore presets.

### TRAFFIC INFORMATION CONTROL

Many stations that broadcast on the FM waveband have a TP code to signify that they carry traffic programme information.

#### Activating traffic announcements

Before you can receive traffic announcements, you must press either the TA or TRAFFIC button. A ‘TA’ display will appear to show the feature is switched on.

If you are already tuned to a station that broadcasts traffic information, ‘TP’ will also be displayed. Otherwise the unit will search for a traffic programme.

When traffic information is broadcast, it will automatically interrupt normal radio or CD playback and ‘Traffic announcement (TA)’ will appear in the display.

If a non-traffic station is selected or recalled using a preset button, the audio unit will remain on that station unless TA or TRAFFIC is turned off, then on again.

**NOTE**

- If TA is on and you select a preset or manual tune to a non TA station no traffic announcement will be heard.
- When you are listening to a non TA station and turn TA off and on again a TP seek will occur.
Audio unit operation

▼ Traffic announcement volume

Traffic announcements interrupt normal broadcasts at a preset minimum level that is usually louder than normal listening volumes.
To adjust the preset volume:

- Use the volume control to make the necessary adjustment during an incoming TA broadcast. The display will show the level selected.

▼ Ending traffic announcements

The audio unit will return to normal operation at the end of each traffic announcement. To end the announcement prematurely, press TA or TRAFFIC during the announcement.

NOTE

If you press TA or TRAFFIC at any other time it will switch all announcements off.
Audio unit menus

**AUTOMATIC VOLUME CONTROL**

When available, automatic volume control (AVC) adjusts the volume level to compensate for engine noise and road speed noise.

1. Press the MENU button and select AUDIO.
2. Select AVC LEVEL or ADAPTIVE VOL.
3. Use the left or right arrow button to adjust the setting.
4. Press the OK button to confirm your selection.
5. Press the MENU button to return.

**DIGITAL SIGNAL PROCESSING (DSP)**

**DSP occupancy**

This feature takes into account the differences in distance from the various speakers in the vehicle to each seat. Select the sitting position for which the audio is to be correctly enhanced.

**DSP equaliser**

Select the music category that most suits your listening preference. The audio output will change to enhance the particular style of music chosen.

**Changing the DSP settings**

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select AUDIO or AUDIO SETTINGS.
3. Scroll to the required DSP function.
4. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required setting.
5. Press the OK button to confirm your selection.
6. Press the MENU button to return.
**NEWS BROADCASTS**

Some audio units interrupt normal reception to broadcast news bulletins from stations on the FM waveband or radio data system (RDS) and enhanced other network (EON) linked stations, in the same way as traffic information is provided.

During news broadcasts, the display will indicate there is an incoming announcement. News interrupts are broadcast at the same preset volume level as traffic announcements.

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select AUDIO or AUDIO SETTINGS.
3. Scroll to NEWS and turn on or off with the OK button.
4. Press the MENU button to return.

**ALTERNATIVE FREQUENCIES**

Many programmes that broadcast on the FM waveband have a programme identification (PI) code, which can be recognised by audio units.

If your radio has alternative frequencies (AF) tuning switched on and you move from one transmission area to another, this facility will search for and switch to a stronger station signal, if one can be found.

Under certain conditions, however, AF tuning may temporarily disrupt normal reception.

When selected, the unit continually evaluates signal strength and, if a better signal becomes available, the unit will switch to that alternative. It mutes while it checks a list of alternative frequencies and, if necessary, it will search once across the selected waveband for a genuine alternative frequency.

It will restore radio reception when it finds one or, if one is not found, the unit will return to the original stored frequency.

When selected, ‘AF’ will be shown in the display.

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select AUDIO or AUDIO MENU.
3. Scroll to ALTERNAT FREQ. or ALTERNATIVE FREQ. and turn on or off with the OK button.
4. Press the MENU button to return.
Audio unit menus

REGIONAL MODE (REG)

Regional mode (REG) controls the behaviour of AF switching between regionally related networks of a parent broadcaster. A broadcaster may run a fairly large network across a large part of the country. At various times of the day this large network may be broken down into a number of smaller regional networks, typically centred on major towns or cities. When the network is not split into regional variants, the whole network carries the same programming. Regional mode ON: This prevents ‘random’ AF switches when neighbouring regional networks are not carrying the same programming. Regional mode OFF: This allows a larger coverage area if neighbouring regional networks are carrying the same programming, but can cause ‘random’ AF switches if they are not.

1. Press the MENU button.

2. Select AUDIO or AUDIO SETTINGS.

3. Scroll to RDS REGIONAL and turn on or off with the OK button.

4. Press the MENU button to return.
COMPACT DISC PLAYBACK

NOTE

During playback, the display indicates the disc, track and time that has elapsed since the start of the track.

During radio reception, press the CD button once to start CD playback. Playback will start immediately after a disc is loaded.

TRACK SELECTION

• Press the seek up button once to move to the next track or press it repeatedly to access later tracks.
• Press the seek down button once to replay the current track. If pressed within two seconds of the start of a track, the previous track will be selected.
• Press the seek down button repeatedly to select previous tracks.

▼Type 2, 3 and 4

Press the up or down arrow buttons, and using the OK button, select the required track.

▼Type 3 and 4

The desired track number may be entered using the numeric keypad. Dial the required track number until complete (for example 1 then 2 for track 12), or dial the number and directly press OK.
Compact disc player

**FAST FORWARD/REVERSE**

Press and hold the seek down or up buttons to search backwards or forwards within the tracks on the disc.

**SHUFFLE/RANDOM**

Random track playback, also known as shuffle, plays all tracks on the CD in random order.

**Type 1**

1. Press the SHUFFLE button in CD mode.

When an MP3 CD is playing, options include SHUFFLE for the whole CD, or to play all the tracks in the folder in a random order.

**Type 2**

1. Press the MENU button and select CD MODE.
2. Select SHUFFLE, which then enables the function to be selected on or off.

When an MP3 CD is playing, options include SHUFFLE for the whole CD, or to play all the tracks in the folder in a random order.

**Type 3 and 4**

Press function button 2.

**NOTE**

When an MP3 CD is playing, options include SHUFFLE for the whole CD, or to play all the tracks in the folder in a random order. Repeat presses of function button 2 will toggle these options.

Use the seek up or down button to select the next track to shuffle if required.
Compact disc player

REPEAT COMPACT DISC TRACKS

▼ Type 1
1. Press REPEAT button in CD mode.
When an MP3 CD is playing, options include REPEAT for the track, or to repeat all the tracks in the folder.

▼ Type 2
1. Press the MENU button and select CD MODE.
2. Select REPEAT, which then enables the function to be selected on or off. The track will replay once ended.
When an MP3 CD is playing, options include REPEAT for the track, or to repeat all the tracks in the folder.

▼ Type 3 and 4
Press function button 1.
When an MP3 CD is playing, options include REPEAT for the track, or to repeat all the tracks in the folder. Repeat presses of function button 1 will toggle these options.

COMPACT DISC TRACK SCANNING

The SCAN function allows you to preview each track for approximately 5 seconds.

▼ Type 1
1. Press CD/AUX to select CD MODE.
2. Short press SCAN/AS button to activate CD scanning.
3. Short press the SCAN/AS button again to continue listening to a track.

▼ Type 2
Various scan modes are possible, according to the type of CD currently playing.
1. Press the MENU button and select CD MODE.
2. Select SCAN, which then enables the function to be selected on or off.

NOTE
When an MP3 CD is playing, options include SCAN for the CD, or just the tracks in the folder.

3. Press the OK button to stop the scan mode.
Compact disc player

▼ Type 3 and 4

1. Press function button 3.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOTE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>When an MP3 CD is playing, options include SCAN for the CD, or just the tracks in the folder. Repeat presses of function button 3 will toggle these options.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Press function button 3 again to stop the scan mode.

MP3 FILE PLAYBACK

MP3 (MPEG 1 Audio Layer-3) is a standard technology and format for compressing audio data. This allows a more efficient use of the media. You can play MP3 files recorded on CD-ROMs, CD-Rs, and CD-RWs. The disc must be in the ISO 9660 level 1 or level 2 format, or Joliet or Romeo in the expansion format. You can also use a disc recorded in Multi Session.

▼ ISO 9660 format

This is the most common international standard for the logical format of files and folders on a CD-ROM. There are several specification levels. In Level 1, file names must be in the 8.3 format (no more than 8 characters in the name, no more than 3 characters in the extension “.MP3”) and in capital letters. Folder names can be no longer than 8 characters. There can be no more than 8 folder levels (trees). Level 2 specifications allow file names up to 31 characters long. Each folder can have up to 8 trees. For Joliet or Romeo in the expansion format, please consider these restrictions when configuring your CD writing software.
Multi session

This is a recording method that enables adding of data using the Track-At-Once method. Conventional CDs begin at a CD control area called the Lead-in and end at an area called Lead-out. A Multi Session CD is a CD having multiple sessions, with each segment from Lead-in to Lead-out regarded as a single session.

- CD-Extra: The format that records audio (audio CD data) as tracks on session 1, and records data as tracks on session 2.
- Mixed CD: In this format, data is recorded as track 1, and audio (audio CD data) is recorded as track 2.

File formats

- With formats other than ISO 9660 level 1 and level 2, folder names or file names may not be displayed correctly.
- When naming, be sure to add the file extension “.MP3” to the file name.
- If you put the extension “.MP3” to a file other than MP3, the unit cannot recognise the file properly and will generate random noise that could damage your speakers.
- The following discs take a longer time to start playback.
  - a disc recorded with complicated tree structure.
  - a disc recorded in Multi Session.
  - a non-finalised disc to which data can be added.

Playing a multi session disc

When the first track of the first session is audio CD data

Only audio CD data of the first session is played back. Non-audio CD data/MP3 file information (track number, time, etc.) is displayed with no sound.

When the first track of the first session is not audio CD data

- If an MP3 file is in the disc, only MP3 file(s) play back and other data is skipped. (Audio CD data is not recognised.)
- If no MP3 file is in the disc, nothing is played back. (Audio CD data is not recognised.)

MP3 files playback order

The playback order of the folders and files is as shown.

NOTE

A folder that does not include an MP3 file is skipped.
Compact disc player

Playback tip: To specify a desired playback order, before the folder or file name, input the order by number (e.g., “01,” “02”), then record contents onto a disc. (The order differs depending on the writing software.)

△MP3 navigation

MP3 tracks may be recorded on the CD in several ways. They can all be placed in the root directory like a conventional audio CD, or they can be placed in folders that may represent, for example, an album, an artist, or a genre.

The normal playing sequence on CDs with multiple folders is to play the tracks within the root (top level) first, then the tracks in any folder(s) within the root, then move onto the second folder, and so forth.

- Press the up or down arrow buttons to enter the track list.
- Navigate the hierarchy using the arrow buttons to select another folder or track (file).
- Press OK to select a highlighted track.

△ID3 Tag Version 2

The following occurs when an MP3 file containing ID3 tag ver.2 is played:

- When skipping a portion of ID3 tag ver.2 (at the beginning of the track), sound is not output. Skip time changes depending ID3 tag ver.2 capacity. Example: At 64 kbytes, it is about 2 seconds (with RealJukebox).
- The displayed elapsed playing time when skipping a portion of ID3 tag ver.2 is inaccurate. For MP3 files of a bit rate other than 128 kbps, time is not displayed accurately during playback.
- When an MP3 file is created with MP3 conversion software (e.g. RealJukebox - a registered trademark of RealNetworks Inc), ID3 ver.2 will automatically be written.
Compact disc player

**MP3 DISPLAY OPTIONS**

**NOTE**

Type 1 units may require repeated button presses of the INFO button to display all the available track information.

When an MP3 disc is playing, certain information encoded in each track can be displayed. Such information will normally include:

- The file name
- The folder name
- ID3 information which might be the album or artist's name

The unit will normally show the file name that is playing. To select one of the other items of information:

- Press the INFO button.

**CD text display options**

When an audio disc with CD text is playing, limited information encoded in each track can be displayed. Such information will normally include:

- The disc name
- The artist name
- The track name

These display options are selected in the same way as MP3 displays.

---

**ENDING COMPACT DISC PLAYBACK**

To restore radio reception on all units:

- Press the RADIO button.

**NOTE**

This will not eject the CD; the disc will merely pause at the point where radio reception was restored.

To resume CD playback, press the CD button again.
NOTE
For optimum performance when using any auxiliary device set the volume on the device high. This will reduce audio interference when charging the device via the vehicle power supply socket.

When fitted the Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket permits an auxiliary device, such as an MP3 player, to be linked into the vehicle audio system. Output can be played through the vehicle speakers. To connect an auxiliary device, plug it into the AUX IN socket using a 3.5 mm conventional audio jack connector. Select the auxiliary input via the AUX button and playback will be heard through the vehicle speakers. LINE IN or LINE IN ACTIVE will appear in the vehicle audio unit display. Volume, treble and bass can be adjusted on the vehicle audio unit as normal. The vehicle audio unit buttons can also be used to restore playback from the vehicle audio unit, while the auxiliary device remains connected.
ANTENNA

CAUTION
To prevent damage to the aerial, remove it before entering a car wash or passing beneath a low overhead clearance.

Fixed Aerial
The radio aerial is mounted on the roof of the vehicle above the interior rear view mirror. It is fixed and cannot be raised and lowered, however the aerial spire can be removed by unscrewing it from the base.

Folding Aerial
The radio aerial is mounted on the roof of the vehicle above the interior rear view mirror. It is can be raised and lowered. The aerial spire can be removed by unscrewing it from the base.
# Audio troubleshooting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Audio unit display</th>
<th>Rectification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PLEASE CHECK CD</td>
<td>General error message for CD fault conditions, such as cannot read the CD, data-CD inserted, etc. Ensure disc is loaded correct way up. Clean and re-try, or replace disc with known music disc. If error persists contact your repairer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD DRIVE MALFUNCTION</td>
<td>General error message for CD fault conditions such as possible mechanism fault.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD DRIVE HIGH TEMP</td>
<td>Ambient temperature too hot - unit will not work until it has cooled down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPOD ERROR READING DEVICE</td>
<td>General error message for iPod fault conditions, such as cannot read the data. Ensure iPod is inserted correctly. If error persists contact your repairer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GENERAL INFORMATION

⚠️ CAUTION
Using the system with the engine off will drain the battery.

This section describes the functions and features of the Bluetooth® mobile phone hands free system. The Bluetooth® mobile phone part of the system provides interaction with the audio or navigation system and your mobile phone. It allows you to use the audio or navigation system to make and receive calls without having to hold your mobile phone.

▼ Compatibility of phones

⚠️ CAUTION
As no common agreement exists, mobile phone manufacturers are able to implement a variety of profiles in their Bluetooth® devices. Because of this, an incompatibility can occur between the phone and hands-free system, which in some cases may significantly degrade the system performance. To avoid this situation, only recommended phones should be used. Consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer for full details.

TELEPHONE SETUP

▼ Phonebook

After start up access to the phonebook list can be delayed for several minutes, depending upon the size.

▼ Phonebook categories

Depending on your phonebook entry, different categories can be displayed in the audio unit. For example:

| M | Mobile |
| O | Office |
| H | Home |
| F | Fax |

NOTE
Entries may be displayed without a category attachment.

The category can also be indicated as an icon:

- Phone
- Mobile
- Home
- Office
- Fax
Telephone

▼ Making a phone an active phone
When using the system for the first time, no phone is connected to the system.

Bluetooth® phone
After bonding a Bluetooth® phone to the system, this becomes the active phone. For further information refer to the phone menu. Select the phone from the active phone menu. Turning the ignition and radio or navigation unit back on again, the last active phone is picked up by the system.

NOTE
In some cases the Bluetooth® connection must also be confirmed on the phone.

▼ Bond another Bluetooth® phone
Bond a new Bluetooth® phone as described in the requirements for a Bluetooth® connection. Phones stored in the system are accessible by using the phone list on the audio unit.

NOTE
A maximum of six devices may be bonded. If six Bluetooth® devices have already been bonded, one of these has to be debonded in order to bond a new device.

BLUETOOTH® SETUP
Before you can use your telephone with your vehicle it must be bonded to the vehicle telephone system.

▼ Handling of phones
Up to six Bluetooth® devices can be bonded to the vehicle system.

NOTE
- If there is an ongoing call when the phone in use is selected as the new active phone, the call is transferred to the vehicle audio system.
- Even if connected to the car system, your phone can still be used in the usual way.

▼ Requirements for Bluetooth® connection
The following are required before a Bluetooth® phone connection can be made.

1. The Bluetooth® feature must be activated on the phone and on the audio unit. Make sure the Bluetooth® menu option in the audio unit is set to ON. For information on phone settings, refer to your phone user guide.

2. In the Bluetooth® menu on your phone, search for Mazda Audio and select it.
3. Enter the code number shown on the vehicle display using the phone keypad. If no code number is shown on the display, enter the Bluetooth® PIN number 0000 using the phone keypad. Now enter the Bluetooth® PIN number shown on the vehicle display.

4. If your mobile phone asks you to authorise the automatic connection, select YES.

**NOTE**

A phone call will be disconnected if the audio unit is switched off. If the ignition key is turned to the off position the phone call will remain in progress.

---

**TELEPHONE CONTROLS**

- **Remote control**
- **Voice and mode button**

Incoming calls can be accepted by pressing the answer call button once. Press the reject call button to end the call or to reject the incoming call.
Telephone

USING THE TELEPHONE

NOTE

- Refer to your audio guide for details of the controls. See Audio unit overview (page 235).
- You can exit the phone menu by pressing any source button CD, RADIO or AUX.
- When referred to, the use of the up/down arrow buttons, seek up and seek down buttons, and the OK button can be used on either the steering wheel or the audio unit.

This chapter describes the phone functions of the audio unit. An active phone must be present. Even if connected to the audio unit, your phone can still be used in the usual way.

▼ Making a call

Dialling a number using voice control
Phone numbers can be dialled using voice control. See Telephone commands (page 280).

Dialling a number using the address book *

You can access your phone address book via Bluetooth®. The entries will appear in the unit display.

1. Press the PHONE or the answer call button.
2. Press the up/down arrow buttons until PHONEBOOK is shown.
3. Press the OK button.

NOTE

You can also use the telephone keypad to select the first letter of the entry you are looking for. Press the relevant number that corresponds to the letter repeatedly until the required letter is displayed.

4. Press the up/down arrow buttons to select the desired phone number.

NOTE

Press and hold the up/down arrow buttons to search forwards or backwards within the phonebook.

5. Press the OK button to dial the selected phone number.

Dialling a number using the telephone keypad *

If you have an audio unit with a telephone keypad (buttons 0-9, *, and #):

1. Press the PHONE button.
2. Dial the number using the telephone keypad on the audio unit.
3. Press the OK button.

NOTE

If you enter an incorrect digit whilst entering a phone number, press function button 3 to erase the last digit. A long press will erase the complete string of digits.

Press and hold 0 to enter a + digit.

266 * Some models.
Ending a call
Calls can be ended by:
• pressing the reject call button.
• pressing the OK button.
• pressing function button 4.

Redialling a number
1. Press the PHONE or the answer call button.
2. Press the up/down arrow buttons until CALL LISTS is displayed.
3. Press the OK button.

NOTE
If the active phone does not provide a call out list, the last outgoing call number/entry can be redialled.

4. Press the up/down buttons to select the desired call list.
5. Press the OK button.
6. Press the up/down buttons to select the desired phone number.
7. Press the OK button.

Redialling the last dialled number *
1. Press the PHONE or the answer call button.
2. Press the up/down arrow buttons until REDIAL is displayed.
3. Press the OK button.

Receiving an incoming call
Accepting an incoming call
Incoming calls can be accepted by pressing the answer call button, or by pressing the OK button.

Rejecting an incoming call
Incoming calls can be rejected by:
• pressing the reject call button, or
• pressing the arrow down button to highlight REJECT and then pressing the OK button.

Receiving a second incoming call

NOTE
The second incoming call function must be activated in your phone.

If there is an incoming call whilst there is an ongoing call, a beep will be heard and you will have the option to end the active call and to accept the incoming call.

Accepting a second incoming call

NOTE
The first incoming call will be disconnected and replaced by the second incoming call.

Second incoming calls can be accepted by pressing the answer call button on the steering wheel, the PHONE button, or by pressing the OK button on the audio unit.

Rejecting a second incoming call
Second incoming calls can be rejected by:
• pressing the reject call button.

*Some models.
Telephone

- pressing the arrow down button to highlight **REJECT** and then pressing the **OK** button.
- pressing function button 4.

▼ Muting the microphone

**NOTE**

During a call, it is possible to mute the microphone. Whilst muted, confirmation will appear in the display.

Press function button 1. Press the button once again to turn this function off.

▼ Changing the active phone

**NOTE**

- Phones must be bonded to the system before they can be made active.
- After bonding a phone to the system, this becomes the active phone.

1. Press the **PHONE** or accept call button.
2. Press the up/down buttons until **SELECT PHONE** is shown.
3. Press the **OK** button.
4. Scroll through the different stored phones by using the up/down buttons to display the bonded phones.
5. Press the **OK** button to select the phone which is to be the active phone.

▼ Debonding a bonded phone

A bonded phone can be deleted from the system at any time, unless a phone call is in progress.

1. Press the **PHONE** or accept call button.
2. Press the up/down buttons until **SELECT PHONE** is shown.
3. Press the **OK** button.
4. Press the up/down buttons to highlight the required phone.
5. Press function button 1.
Voice control

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION*

⚠️ CAUTION

Using the system with the engine off will drain the battery.

Voice recognition enables operation of the system without the need to divert your attention from the road ahead in order to change settings, or receive feedback from the system. Whenever you issue one of the defined commands with the system active, the voice recognition system converts your command into a control signal for the system. Your inputs take the form of dialogues or commands. You are guided through these dialogues by announcements or questions. Please familiarise yourself with the functions of the system before using voice recognition.

Supported commands

The voice control system allows you to control the following vehicle functions:

- Bluetooth® phone
- radio
- CD Player
- external device (USB)
- external device (iPod)
- external device (Bluetooth® audio)
- automatic air-conditioning

▶ System response

As you work through a voice session the system will prompt you with a beep tone each time the system is ready to proceed. Do not try to give any commands until the beep tone has been heard. The voice control system will repeat each spoken command back to you. If you are not sure how to continue say "HELP" for assistance or "CANCEL" if you do not wish to continue. Say "Back" to perform the operation from the beginning again. The "HELP" function provides only a subset of the available voice commands. Detailed explanations of all possible voice commands can be found on the following pages.

▶ Voice commands

All voice commands should be given using a natural speaking voice, as if speaking to a passenger or on the phone. Your voice level should be dependant on the surrounding noise level inside or outside the vehicle but do not shout.

*Some models. 269
Voice control

**USING VOICE CONTROL**

**System operation**

The order and content of the voice controls are given in the following lists. The tables show the sequence of user voice commands and system responses for each available function. <> indicates a number or stored name tag to be inserted by the user.

**Short cuts**

There are a number of voice command short cuts available, which allow you to control some vehicle features without having to follow the complete command menu. These are:

- phone: "MOBILE NAME", "DIAL NUMBER", "CALL <first name>, <last name> AT <location>" (Ex. "Call Fred Bloggs at home") , and "REDIAL"
- CD player/CD changer:"DISC"
- automatic air-conditioning:"TEMPERATURE <number> DEGREES (Ex. "Temperature 21 degrees")", "AUTO MODE", "DEFROSTING/DEMISTING ON" and "DEFROSTING/DEMISTING OFF"
- radio:"STATION NAME"

**Switching audio source**

When the following command is spoken out, the audio source can be switched.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Voice command</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;PLAY RADIO&quot;</td>
<td>Switches the audio source to radio.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;PLAY CD&quot;</td>
<td>Switches the audio source to CD.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;LINE IN&quot; or &quot;AUXILIARY&quot;</td>
<td>Switches the audio source to auxiliary input.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;PLAY USB&quot;</td>
<td>Switches the audio source to USB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;PLAY IPOD&quot;</td>
<td>Switches the audio source to iPod.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;PLAY BLUETOOTH&quot;</td>
<td>Switches the audio source to Bluetooth® audio.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE**

- Some commands cannot be used depending on devices and use conditions.
- If the Bluetooth® device, USB, or AUX is not connected, the related commands cannot be used.

**Start communicating with the system**

Before you can start talking to the system you first have to press the VOICE button for each operation and wait until the system answers with a beep. See Voice Control (page 49). Press the button again to cancel the voice session.
Voice control

▼ Name tag

The name tag functionality can support the phone, audio and navigation features by using the "STORE NAME" function. You can assign name tags to items such as favourite radio stations and personal phone contacts. See Audio unit commands (page 271). See Telephone commands (page 280).

- Store up to 20 name tags per function.
- The average recording time for each name tag is approximately 2-3 seconds.

AUDIO UNIT COMMANDS *

▼ CD Player

You can control playback directly by voice control.

Overview

The overview below shows the available voice commands. The following lists will give further information about the complete command menu in selected examples.

*Some models.
Voice control

**"CD"**
- "PLAY"
- "TRACK"
- "SHUFFLE ALL"
- "SHUFFLE FOLDER"
- "SHUFFLE OFF"
- "REPEAT FOLDER"
- "REPEAT TRACK"
- "REPEAT OFF"

* Only available if the CD contains audio data files like MP3 or WMA.

**Track**
You can choose a track on your CD directly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;CD&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;CD&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;TRACK&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;TRACK NUMBER PLEASE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>&quot;&lt;a number between 1 and 99&gt;&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;TRACK&lt;number&gt;&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Additionally, numbers can be spoken as up to four single digits (for example "2", "4", "5" for track 245)

**Shuffle all**
To set random playback.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;CD&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;CD&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;SHUFFLE ALL&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Radio**
The radio voice commands support the functionality of the radio and allow you to tune radio stations by voice control.

**Overview**
The overview below shows the available voice commands. The following lists will give further information about the complete command menu.
Voice control

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;RADIO&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;RADIO&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;AM &lt;frequency&gt;&quot;*</td>
<td>&quot;RADIO&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;FM &lt;frequency&gt;&quot;*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The frequency may be entered in a variety of ways. Refer below for representative examples.

Tune frequency
This function allows you to tune your radio by voice commands.

FM band: 87.5 - 108.0 in increments of 0.1
- "Eighty nine point nine"(89.9)
- "Ninety"(90.0)
- "One hundred point five"(100.5)
- "One zero one point one"(101.1)
- "One zero eight"(108.0)

AM/MW band: 531 - 1602 in increments of 9
- "Five thirty one"(531)
- "Nine hundred"(900)
- "Fourteen forty"(1440)
- "Fifteen zero three"(1503)
- "Ten eighty"(1080)

AM/LW band: 153 - 281 in increments of 1
- "One hundred five"(153)
- "Two hundred forty one"(241)

Store name
If you have tuned a radio station, you can store it with a name in the directory.
### Voice control

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;RADIO&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;RADIO&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;STORE NAME&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;STORE NAME&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>&quot;&lt;name&gt;&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;NAME PLEASE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>&quot;&lt;name&gt;&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;REPEAT NAME PLEASE&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Station name**

This function allows you to call up a stored radio station.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;RADIO&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;RADIO&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;STATION NAME&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;NAME PLEASE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>&quot;&lt;name&gt;&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;TUNE &lt;name&gt;&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Delete name**

This function allows you to delete a stored radio station.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;RADIO&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;RADIO&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;DELETE NAME&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;NAME PLEASE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>&quot;&lt;name&gt;&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;DELETE &lt;name&gt;&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>&quot;YES&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;DELETED&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Play directory**

This function allows you to let the system tell you all of the stored radio stations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;RADIO&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;RADIO&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;PLAY DIRECTORY&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;PLAY &lt;DIRECTORY&gt;&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Delete directory**

This function allows you to delete all stored radio stations at once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;RADIO&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;RADIO&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;DELETE DIRECTORY&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;DELETE DIRECTORY&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>&quot;YES&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;RADIO DIRECTORY DELETED&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>&quot;NO&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;COMMAND CANCELLED&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Voice control

Play
This function switches the audio source to the radio mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;RADIO&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;RADIO&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;PLAY&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

▼ Auxiliary input
This function allows you to switch the audio source to the attached auxiliary input device.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;LINE IN&quot; or &quot;AUXILIARY&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;LINE IN&quot; or &quot;AUXILIARY&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

▼ External devices - USB
These voice commands support the functionality of an external USB device which may be connected to the audio unit.

Overview
The overview below shows the available voice commands. The following lists will give further information about the complete command menu in selected examples.
## Voice control

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;USB&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;USB&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;USB&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;PLAY&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;TRACK&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;TRACK NUMBER PLEASE&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;PLAYLIST&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;TRACK &lt;number&gt;&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;FOLDER&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;SHUFFLE ALL&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;LOCATION&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;SHUFFLE FOLDER&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;LOCATION&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;SHUFFLE PLAYLIST&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;LOCATION&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;SHUFFLE OFF&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;LOCATION&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;REPEAT TRACK&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;LOCATION&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;REPEAT FOLDER&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;LOCATION&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;REPEAT OFF&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;LOCATION&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Play lists and folders activated by voice control must be assigned special filenames.

### USB play

This function allows you to switch the audio source to the attached USB device.

**Steps**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;USB&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;USB&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;PLAY&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### USB Track

You can choose a track on your USB device directly.

**Steps**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;USB&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;USB&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;TRACK&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;TRACK NUMBER PLEASE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;&lt;a number between 1 and 99&gt;&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;TRACK &lt;number&gt;&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Additionally, numbers can be spoken as up to four single digits (for example "2", "4", "5" for track 245)

### External devices - iPod

These voice commands support the functionality of an iPod which may be connected to the audio unit.

### Overview

The overview below shows the available voice commands. The following lists will give further information about the complete command menu in selected examples.
Voice control

"IPOD"
"PLAY"
"TRACK"
"PLAYLIST"
"SHUFFLE ALL"
"SHUFFLE FOLDER"
"SHUFFLE PLAYLIST"
"SHUFFLE OFF"
"REPEAT TRACK"
"REPEAT FOLDER"
"REPEAT OFF"

* Playlist activated by voice control must be assigned special filenames.

iPod Track
You can choose a track off the all titles list of your iPod directly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;IPOD&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;IPOD&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;TRACK&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;TRACK NUMBER PLEASE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>&quot;:&lt;a number between 1 and 99&gt;&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;TRACK &lt;number&gt;&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Can be used as a shortcut.
** Additionally, numbers can be spoken as up to five single digits (for example "5", "2", "4", "5", "3" for track 52453), to a limit of 65535.

iPod playlist
You can choose a playlist from your iPod directly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;IPOD&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;IPOD&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;PLAYLIST&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;PLAYLIST NUMBER PLEASE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>&quot;:&lt;a number between 1 and 10&gt;&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;PLAYLIST &lt;number&gt;&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Playlist activated by voice control must be assigned special filenames
Voice control

External devices - Bluetooth®

These voice commands support the functionality of Bluetooth® which may be connected to the audio unit.

Overview

The overview below shows the available voice commands. The following lists will give further information about the complete command menu in selected examples.


### Voice control

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;BLUETOOTH&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;PLAY&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;SHUFFLE ALL&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;SHUFFLE OFF&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;REPEAT TRACK&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;REPEAT OFF&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Voice control

TELEPHONE COMMANDS*

Phone

Your phone system allows you to create an additional phonebook. The stored entries can be dialled by voice control. Phone numbers stored by using voice control are stored on the vehicle system and not in your phone.

Overview

The overview below shows the available voice commands. The following lists will give further information about the complete command menu in selected examples.

280  *Some models.
Voice control

**Phone functions**

**Dial number**

Phone numbers can be dialled after giving the name tag voice command.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;TELEPHONE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;TELEPHONE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;DIAL NUMBER&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;NUMBER PLEASE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>&quot;&lt;phone number&gt;&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;&lt;phone number&gt; CONTINUE?&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>&quot;DIAL&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;DIALLING&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;CORRECTION&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;&lt;repeat last part of number&gt; CONTINUE?&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Can be used as a shortcut.

**Dial/Call name**

Phone numbers can be dialled after giving the name tag voice command.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;TELEPHONE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;TELEPHONE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;CALL &lt;first name&gt;, &lt;last name&gt; AT &lt;location&gt; (Ex. &quot;Call Fred Bloggs at home&quot;)&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;DIALLING&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Can be used as a shortcut.

**Redial**

This function allows you to redial the last dialled phone number.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;TELEPHONE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;TELEPHONE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;REDIAL&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;CONFIRM YES OR NO&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>&quot;YES&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;DIALLING&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;NO&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;COMMAND CANCELLED&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Can be used as a shortcut.

**Mobile name**

This function allows you to access phone numbers stored with a name tag in your mobile phone.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;TELEPHONE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;TELEPHONE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;MOBILE NAME&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;MOBILE NAME&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;&lt;phone dependent dialogue&gt;&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Can be used as a shortcut.

**DTMF (Tone dialling)**

This function transfers spoken numbers into DTMF tones. For example, to make a remote enquiry to your home answering machine or to enter a PIN number etc.
Voice control

NOTE

DTMF can only be used during an ongoing call. Operate the VOICE button and wait for the system prompt. Can only be used with vehicles installed with a dedicated VOICE button.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;NUMBER PLEASE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;&lt;numbers 1 to 9, zero, hash, star&gt;&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

▼ Main settings

Reject calls

Calls can be set to be automatically rejected using voice control.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;TELEPHONE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;TELEPHONE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;REJECT CALLS&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;REJECT CALLS&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;ACCEPT CALLS&quot;*</td>
<td>&quot;ACCEPT CALLS&quot;*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* use this command to turn the reject mode off

CLIMATE CONTROL COMMANDS *

▼ Climate

The climate voice commands supports the functionality of the fan speed, temperature and mode settings. Not all functions are available on all vehicles.

Overview

The overview below shows the available voice commands. The following lists will give further information about the complete command menu in selected examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>&quot;CLIMATE&quot;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;DEFROSTING/DEMISTING ON&quot;*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;DEFROSTING/DEMISTING OFF&quot;*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;TEMPERATURE &lt;number&gt; DEGREES&quot;*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;AUTO MODE&quot;*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Can be used as a shortcut.

Defrosting/Demisting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;CLIMATE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;CLIMATE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;DEFROSTING ON/DEMISTING ON&quot;*</td>
<td>&quot;DEFROSTING ON/DEMISTING ON&quot;*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;DEFROSTING OFF/DEMISTING OFF&quot;*</td>
<td>&quot;DEFROSTING OFF/DEMISTING OFF&quot;*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Can be used as a shortcut.
**Temperature**

This function allows you to adjust the temperature.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;CLIMATE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;CLIMATE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;TEMPERATURE &lt;number&gt; DEGREES (Ex. Temperature 21 degrees)&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;TEMPERATURE &lt;number&gt; DEGREES&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Can be used as a shortcut. The temperature can be set in 0.5 degree C (1 degrees F) increments between 16 (61 degrees F) and 28 (82 degrees F) degrees C.

**Auto mode**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Steps</th>
<th>User says</th>
<th>System answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>&quot;CLIMATE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;CLIMATE&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>&quot;AUTO MODE&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;AUTO MODE&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Can be used as a shortcut. Can be deactivated by selecting a different temperature or fan speed.
Connectivity

**GENERAL INFORMATION**

⚠️ **CAUTION**

- Take care when handling external devices with exposed electrical connectors (such as the USB plug). Always replace the protective cap/shield when possible. There may be a risk of electrostatic discharge causing damage to the device.
- Do not touch or handle the USB socket in the vehicle. Cover the socket when not in use.
- Only use USB Mass-Storage device compliant devices.
- Always switch your audio unit to a different source (for example the radio) before unplugging the USB device.
- Do not install or connect USB hubs or splitters.

**NOTE**

- The system is only designed to recognise and read suitable audio files from a USB device that conforms to the USB Mass-Storage device class or an iPod. Not all available USB devices can be guaranteed to function with the system.
- It is possible to connect compatible devices with a trailing USB lead as well as those that plug into the vehicle USB socket directly (for example USB memory sticks and pen drives).
- Some USB devices with a higher power consumption may not be compatible (for example some larger hard drives).
- Access time to read the files on the external device will vary depending upon factors such as the file structure, size and device content.

The system supports a range of external devices, to fully integrate with your audio unit via the USB and auxiliary input sockets. Once connected, control of the external device is possible via the audio unit.

A list of typical compatible devices are shown below:

- USB memory sticks
- USB portable hard drives
- Some MP3 players with USB connection
- iPod media players
Connectivity

The system is USB 2.0 full speed compatible, USB 1.1 host compliant and supports FAT 16/32 file systems.

Information on audio file structures for external devices

USB
Create only a single partition on the USB device. We recommend that you put MP3 files in a folder. If play lists are created, they must contain correct file paths referenced to the USB device. It is recommended to create the playlist after the audio files have been transferred to the USB device. Playlist must be created in .m3u format. Audio files must be in .mp3 format. Do not exceed the following limits:

- 1000 items per folder (files, folders and play lists)
- 5000 folders per USB device (including play lists)
- 8 subfolder levels.

To enable voice control for custom play lists and folders, follow the procedure below:

- Create folders named with the structure “Mazda <*>” where <*> is a number 1-10. For example "Mazda3" without an extension.
- Create play lists named with the structure “Mazda <*>.m3u” where <*> is a number 1-10. For example “Mazda5.m3u” without any space between “Mazda” and the number.

Thereafter, custom folders and play lists will be selectable with voice control. See Audio unit commands (page 271).

iPod
To enable voice control for custom play lists, create play lists named with the structure “Mazda <*>” where <*> is a number 1-10. For example “Mazda7” without any space between “Mazda” and the number. Thereafter, play lists will be selectable with voice control. See Audio unit commands (page 271).
Connectivity

CONNECTING AN EXTERNAL DEVICE

⚠️ WARNING

Make sure the external device is securely mounted within the vehicle, and that trailing connections do not obstruct any of the driving controls.

External devices may be connected using the auxiliary input socket and the USB port. See Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket (page 111). See USB port (page 111).

▼ Connection

Plug in the device, and if necessary secure it to prevent movement within the vehicle.

Connecting an iPod

It is possible to connect your iPod using the standard iPod USB lead and a separate 3.5 mm audio jack lead. If using this method preset the iPod volume to maximum and turn off any equalizer settings before making the connections:

- Connect the headphone output of the iPod to the AUX IN socket.
- Connect the USB lead from the iPod to the vehicle USB socket.

CONNECTING AN EXTERNAL DEVICE - VEHICLES WITH: BLUETOOTH®

▼ Connecting a Bluetooth® audio device

⚠️ CAUTION

As various standards exist, manufacturers are able to implement a variety of profiles in their Bluetooth® devices. Because of this, an incompatibility can occur between the Bluetooth® device and the system, which in some cases may limit system functionality. To avoid this situation, only recommended devices should be used.

Consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer for full details.

Bonding the device

NOTE

Some audio and navigation units have a separate Bluetooth® audio menu. Use this to access setup and control.

To connect the device to the system follow the same procedure as for Bluetooth® hands free phones. See Bluetooth® setup (page 264).
Operating the device
Select Bluetooth® audio as the active source.
Tracks can be accessed by skipping forwards and backwards using the steering wheel controls, or directly from the audio unit controls.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Icon</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>🌟</td>
<td>USB device is the active source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🗄</td>
<td>Folder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎵</td>
<td>Playlist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎼</td>
<td>Album</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☀️</td>
<td>Artist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎥</td>
<td>Filename</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎤</td>
<td>Track title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❓</td>
<td>Information not available</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Connectivity

\textbf{Radio}

\textbf{Operation}

Select the USB device as the audio source by repeatedly pressing the CD/AUX button until USB appears in the display. After first connecting the USB device, the first track within the first folder will start to play automatically. Subsequently, following audio source switching, the position of playback on the USB device is remembered.

To browse the device contents, press the up/down arrow key or the OK button once.

The display will show the track information, together with other important information described below:

- A vertical scroll bar on the right side of the display shows the current position of the folder view.
- ">" after an entry indicates a further level down is readable (for example a folder named after an album, with individual album tracks within that folder).
- "<" before the list indicates that a further level up is readable.
- Icons to the left of track/folder text indicate the type of file/folder. Refer to the list for an explanation of these icons.

To navigate the USB device contents, use the up/down arrow keys to scroll through lists, and the left/right keys to move up or down within the folder hierarchy. Once your desired track, playlist or folder is highlighted, press the OK button to select playback.

\textbf{NOTE}

If you wish to jump to the top level of the USB device contents, press and hold the left arrow key.

\textbf{Audio control}

Press the left and right arrow keys to skip backwards and forwards through tracks. Press and hold the left/right arrow keys to enable fast rewind/fast forward through track content.

Press the up/down arrow key or the OK button to browse the device contents.

Press the SCAN button to scan the whole device, current folder or a playlist if it is in operation.

Press the INFO button to display the following:

- filename
- title
- artist
- album
- track number and playing time.

Repeated button presses will scroll through these displays.

\textbf{SD Navigation units *}

\textbf{Operation}

Select the USB device as the audio source by pressing the CD/AUX button until the USB button appears to the left of the display. Select USB from the available device list.

*Some models.
Connecting the USB device, the first track within the first folder will start to play automatically. Subsequently, following audio source switching, the position of playback on the USB device is remembered.

To browse the device contents, press the scroll up or down arrow button. The display will show the track information, together with other important information described below:

- A vertical scroll bar on the right side of the display shows the current position of the folder view.
- ">" after an entry indicates a further level down is readable (for example a folder named after an album, with individual album tracks within that folder).
- "<" to the left hand side of the display indicates that a further level up is readable.
- Icons to the left of track/folder text indicate the type of file/folder. Refer to the list for an explanation of these icons.

To navigate the USB device contents, use the scroll buttons to browse through lists. Push the button to expand the contents within the highlighted playlist or folder, or to commence playback of a particular track. Press the left arrow key to go up one level.

Audio control

Press the SEEK up and down keys to skip backwards and forwards through tracks. Press and hold the SEEK keys to enable fast rewind/fast forward through track content.

Press the scroll bar arrow keys to browse the device contents.

Press SHUFFLE or REPEAT buttons to enable shuffle and repeat functions with respect to folders and play lists.

Press the SCAN button to scan the current playlist if it is in operation, or the complete USB device or folder.

Press the INFO button to display the following:

- filename
- title
- artist
- album
- track number and playing time.
Connectivity

USING AN IPOD

Various icons are used to identify types of audio file, folders etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Icon</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>🎧</td>
<td>iPod is the active source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📐</td>
<td>iPod playlist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☀</td>
<td>iPod artist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎵</td>
<td>iPod album</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎵</td>
<td>iPod genre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎵</td>
<td>iPod song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📇</td>
<td>iPod generic category</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📜</td>
<td>iPod generic media file</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Radio

Operation

Connect the iPod. See Connecting an external device (page 286).

Select the iPod as the audio source by repeatedly pressing the CD/AUX button until iPod appears in the display.

The iPod menu list for browsing contents will be available through the radio display. Navigation of the contents follows the same principles as for iPod standalone use (for example search by artist, title, etc.). To browse the iPod contents, press the up/down arrow key or the OK button once.

The display will show the track information, together with other important information described below:

- A vertical scroll bar on the right side of the display shows the current position of the list view.
- ">" after an entry indicates a further level down is readable (for example all albums by a particular artist).
- "<" before the list indicates that a further level up is readable.
- An icon on the left side indicates the type of the currently displayed list (for example list of albums). Refer to the list for an explanation of these icons.

To navigate the iPod contents, use the up/down arrow keys to scroll through lists, and the left/right keys to move up or down within the hierarchy. Once your desired track, playlist, album, artist or genre is highlighted, press the OK button to select playback.
NOTE

If you wish to jump to the top level of the iPod contents, press and hold the left arrow key.

Audio control

Press the left and right arrow keys to skip backwards and forwards through tracks.
Press and hold the left/right arrow keys to enable fast rewind/fast forward through track content.
Press the up/down arrow key or the OK button to browse the iPod contents.
Press the MENU key to enter the iPod menu. It is possible to enable shuffle and repeat functions here. It is also possible to enable the iPod "Shuffle songs" option directly from the top level.
Press the SCAN button to scan the currently selected tracks.
Press the INFO button to display the following:
- title
- artist
- track number and playing time.
Repeated button presses will scroll through these displays.

SD Navigation units*

Operation

Connect the iPod. See Connecting an external device (page 286).
Select the iPod as the audio source by pressing the CD/AUX button until the iPod button appears to the left of the display. Select iPod from the available device list.

NOTE

Some devices may be shown but not selectable, depending if the device is connected or not.

The iPod menu list for browsing contents will be available through the display. Navigation of the contents follows the same principles as for iPod standalone use (for example search by artist, title, etc.). To browse the iPod contents, press the scroll up or down arrow button. The display will show the track information, together with other important information described below:
- A vertical scroll bar on the right side of the display shows the current position of the list view.
- "->" after an entry indicates a further level down is readable (for example all albums by a particular artist).
- "<" before the list indicates that a further level up is readable.
- An icon on the left side indicates the type of the currently displayed list (for example list of albums). Refer to the list for an explanation of these icons.

To navigate the iPod contents, use the scroll buttons to browse through lists. Push the button to expand the contents within the highlighted playlist, album, artist, genre or to commence playback of a particular track. Press the left arrow key to go up one level.

Audio control

Press the SEEK up and down keys to skip backwards and forwards through tracks.

*Some models.
Connectivity

Press and hold the SEEK keys to enable fast rewind/fast forward through track content. Press the scroll bar arrow keys to browse the iPod contents. Press the MENU key to enter the iPod menu. It is possible to enable shuffle and repeat functions here. It is also possible to enable the iPod "Shuffle songs" option directly from the top level. Press the SCAN button to scan the currently selected tracks. Press the INFO button to display the following:

- title
- artist
- track number and playing time.
FCC/INDUSTRY CANADA NOTICE

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC ID: WJLRX-42
IC: 7847A-RX42

Changes or modifications to your device not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance can void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

RX-42 - declaration of conformity

We, the party responsible for compliance, declare under our sole responsibility that the Handset Integration product RX-42 is in conformity with the provisions of the following Council Directive: 1999/5/EC.

A copy of the Declaration of Conformity can be found at:

www.novero.com/
declaration_of_conformity
Appendices

TYPE APPROVALS

SD Logo is a trademark.

294
ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY

⚠️ WARNING

- Your vehicle has been tested and certified to legislations relating to electromagnetic compatibility (72/245/EEC, the UNECE *1 10 Regulation or other applicable local requirements). It is your responsibility to ensure that any equipment you have fitted complies with applicable local legislations. Have any equipment fitted by properly trained technicians.

*1 UNECE stands for United Nations Economic Commission for Europe.

- The RF (radio frequency) transmitter equipment (e.g. cellular telephones, amateur radio transmitters etc.) may only be fitted to your vehicle if they comply with the parameters shown in the table below. There are no special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

- Do not mount any transceiver, microphones, speakers, or any other item in the deployment path of the airbag system.

- Do not fasten aerial leads to original vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

- Keep aerial and power leads at least 10 centimetres (4 inches) from any electronic modules and airbags.
## Appendices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency Band MHz</th>
<th>Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)</th>
<th>Aerial Positions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 - 30</td>
<td>100 W</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 - 54</td>
<td>100 W</td>
<td>3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68 - 87.5</td>
<td>50 W</td>
<td>3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142 - 176</td>
<td>50 W</td>
<td>3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>220 - 225</td>
<td>50 W</td>
<td>3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>380 - 512</td>
<td>50 W</td>
<td>3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>806 - 870</td>
<td>10 W</td>
<td>3, 4, 5, 6*, 7*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>870 - 940</td>
<td>10 W</td>
<td>3, 4, 5, 6*, 7*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1200 - 1400</td>
<td>10 W</td>
<td>3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1710 - 1885</td>
<td>10 W</td>
<td>3, 4, 5, 6*, 7*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1885 - 2025</td>
<td>10 W</td>
<td>3, 4, 5, 6*, 7*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Only for GSM/3G cellular phones, with a patch aerial installed inside of the front windscreen.

**NOTE**

- Position 6 & 7 are patch aerials, 8 is the towbar.
- After the installation of RF transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in the vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.

Check all electrical equipment:

- with the ignition **ON**
- with the engine running
- during a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside the vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.
TYPE APPROVALS

Remote control

NOTE

We recommend that you use the remote control only in the countries listed.

If the type approval of your remote control is inspected, refer to the following table.
Appendices

Remote control with flip key

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Official test number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AND</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CY</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DK</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Siemens VDO, 5WK4 8791, CE ¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GB</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GBZ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Siemens VDO, 5WK4 8791, CZ ¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>Siemens VDO, 5WK4 8791, 00590 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Siemens VDO, 5WK4 8793</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MK</td>
<td>Siemens VDO, 5WK4 8791, CLBT/C/101/2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>Siemens VDO, 5WK4 8791, CSK ¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>YU</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CZ</td>
<td>Siemens VDO, 5WK4 8791, CZ ¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IL</td>
<td>Siemens VDO, 5WK4 8791, 00590 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>Siemens VDO, 5WK4 8793</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PL</td>
<td>Siemens VDO, 5WK4 8791, CLBT/C/101/2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RC</td>
<td>92LP0323</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SK</td>
<td>Siemens VDO, 5WK4 8791, CSK ¹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Hereby, Siemens VDO declares that this remote control is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

E76938

298
Appendices

Remote control without flip key

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Official test number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DK</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GB</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GBZ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH</td>
<td>BAKOM 97.0946.K.P.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CY</td>
<td>MCW 129/95 23/1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CZ</td>
<td>ČTÚ 1999 2 R 712</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IL</td>
<td>272/3-1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZ</td>
<td>542/98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RC</td>
<td>電波 88LP0012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SK</td>
<td>TÚ R 119 SR 1999 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZA</td>
<td>Ref.No.: 3K43D/3R1B9/SPLS-RX9/98</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Hereby, Siemens VDO declares that this remote control is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

E76939
## Appendices

### Engine immobiliser

If the type approval of your engine immobiliser is inspected, refer to the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Official test number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>0682 Ø ¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AL</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUS</td>
<td>No number required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BG</td>
<td>ДКД Р 14 085/2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRN</td>
<td>DLM/GEN/18/18/16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRU</td>
<td>DRQ-D-PREMIE-R10-1996-3860-LPD2-1667</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BY</td>
<td>BY/112 03.2.3. ИА2294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDN</td>
<td>3043104475A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Visteon Deutschland GmbH declares that the immobiliser system transceiver complies with the appropriate essential requirements of the Article 3 of the R&TTE and the other relevant provisions.
## Appendices

### Type approvals of the engine immobilisation system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Official test number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CY</td>
<td>M.C.W 129/95/(11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CZ</td>
<td>SPLS/-485/2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HK</td>
<td>SRD 153/01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HR</td>
<td>4/U/U/4250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JOR</td>
<td>(10/1900)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KSA</td>
<td>451R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LV</td>
<td>WT/122/98 II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>F00053/1/2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAL</td>
<td>RLV/IP03-324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEX</td>
<td>08 114/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MK</td>
<td>ENG 3/2/RFS29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZ</td>
<td>OMA/1265(A) 1308/2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PL</td>
<td>S.H. Nr 003/2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RC</td>
<td>1381</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RI</td>
<td>2003/348- OMERG/DC/CAA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

E76941
## Appendices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Official test number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RP</td>
<td>ESD- 0201430C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RUS</td>
<td>ME83 POCC DE.ME83.B02099</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SGP</td>
<td>IDA approved part LPREQ-0259-2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SK</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TR</td>
<td>B.61.TK.0.22.00.00/4940-2632</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UAE</td>
<td>5/10-2/3274/3774</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USA PR</td>
<td>NT8-15607PAT3XCVR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>YU</td>
<td>11/1 01 009/2002 006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZA</td>
<td>SPLS/RX-485/2001</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

E76942
Appendices

Alarm
If the type approval of your alarm is inspected, refer to the following official test numbers.

- [e11] I-00 0012
- [e11] A-00 2236
- [E11] 97R I-01 0012
- [E11] 116R A-00 0084

E76974
Appendices

TYPE APPROVALS

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

European Union

Herby, Schrader Electronics UK Ltd., declares that this TPMS is in compliance with the essential requirements and other provisions of directive 1999/5/EC. The declaration of conformity may be consulted at emcteam@schrader.co.uk

Jordan

Kingdom of Jordan Type approval for tyre pressure sensor.
Model: AG2SZ4
Manufacturer: Schrader Electronics
Type Approval Number: TRC/LPD/2014/56

RAQP/33A/0514/S/(14-0847)
## Index

### A

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A/C</th>
<th>88</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Air-Conditioning</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>About This Manual</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABS</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brakes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABS driving hints</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accessories</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parts and Accessories</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjusting the Steering Wheel</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aerial</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air Conditioning</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air Conditioning</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Principle of Operation</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air-conditioning commands</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climate</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alarm</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternative frequencies</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendices</td>
<td>293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arming the alarm</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arming the engine immobiliser</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ashtray</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At a Glance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Airbag</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing the time</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrument panel overview - Left-hand drive</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrument panel overview - Right-hand drive</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audible Warnings and Indicators</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alarm warning</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direction indicators warning</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Door open warning</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key in ignition warning</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lights on warning</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low fuel level warning</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low washer fluid warning</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Missed lock warning</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not in park warning</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Over speed warning</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parking brake warning</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restraints back-up warning</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turn indicator</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio Control</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seek</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio introduction</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio system care</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio system security</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio troubleshooting</td>
<td>262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio unit clock and date displays</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio unit commands</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auxiliary input</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD Player</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External devices - iPod</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External devices - USB</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radio</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio unit menus</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio unit operation</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio unit overview</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autolamps</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Form No.8FX5-EI-17DT
Index

A

Automatic Air-Conditioning .......... 92
  Air distribution control .......... 93
  Blower .................................. 93
  Cooling the interior quickly ...... 95
  Recirculated air ...................... 88
  Switching off the automatic air-
  conditioning ......................... 96
  Switching the air conditioning on
  and off .................................. 95
  Temperature control ............... 94
  Windscreen defrosting and
demisting ............................. 95
Automatic Transmission ............ 126
  Active Adaptive Shift (AAS) ..... 128
  Emergency park position release
  button .................................. 129
  Hints on driving with an automatic
  transmission .......................... 128
  Selector lever positions .......... 126
Automatic volume control .......... 250
  Autostore control .................. 248
    Type 1 .......................... 248, 254, 255
    Type 2, 3 and 4 ................. 248
Autowipers .......................... 50
  Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket .. 111
  Auxiliary Power Points .......... 108

B

Booster leads
  Jump-Starting the Vehicle ....... 190
Booster Seats ......................... 17
  Booster cushion (Group 3) ....... 17
  Booster seat (Group 2) .......... 17
Brake and Clutch Fluid Check ..... 179
Brakes ................................ 130
  Principle of Operation .......... 130
Bulb changing
  Changing a Bulb ................. 60
  Bulb Specification Chart ....... 67

C

Capacities and Specifications
  Capacities and Specifications .... 211
  Technical Specifications .......... 211
Car Wash
  Cleaning the Exterior .......... 188
Catalytic Converter .................. 120
  Driving with a catalytic
  converter ............................ 120
Changing a Bulb ...................... 60
  Centre high mount stop lamp .. 65
  Exterior mirror lamps .......... 62
  Front map lamp .................. 64
  Headlights high and low beam .. 61
  Interior lamp ..................... 64
  Number plate lamp ............... 64
  Rear lamps ....................... 63
  Side direction indicator light .. 62
  Side lamps and front direction
  indicators .......................... 61
Changing a Fuse ..................... 160

306
Index

C

Changing a Road Wheel ............... 194
Installing a road wheel .......... 201
Jacking and lifting points .......... 198
Locking wheel nuts .................... 194
Removing a road wheel .......... 200
Spare wheel ............................... 196
Stowing the wheel ................... 202
Vehicle jack ............................... 194
Changing the remote control battery
Changing the remote control battery ........................................... 37
Changing the Wiper Blades .......... 52
Changing the windscreen wiper blades ............................................ 52
Checking the Wiper Blades .......... 52
Child Restraint
Child restraint precautions .......... 9
Child Safety ............................... 9
Child Safety Locks .................... 19
Left-hand side ............................ 19
Right-hand side ......................... 19
Child Seat Positioning ............... 14
Cigar Lighter ................................. 107
Cleaning the Exterior ................. 188
Body paintwork preservation ....... 188
Cleaning the chrome trim .......... 188
Cleaning the headlamps .......... 188
Cleaning the rear window .......... 188
Cleaning the Interior .................... 189
Instrument cluster screens, LCD screens, radio screens .................. 189
Rear windows ............................. 189
Seat belts ................................. 28, 189
Clock ........................................... 106
Coded keys ..................................... 43
Cold Weather Precautions .......... 149
Compact disc playback .......... 253
Compact disc player .................. 253
Compact disc track scanning ........ 255
Type 1 ........................................... 255
Type 2 ........................................... 254, 255
Type 3 and 4 ............................... 256
Connecting an external device
Connecting an external device .... 286
Connection ................................. 286
Connecting an external device - Vehicles
With: Bluetooth® ............................... 286
Connecting a Bluetooth® audio device ........................................... 286
Connectivity ................................. 284
General Information .................... 284
Constant monitoring ................... 33
Convenience features ..................... 106
Coolant Check
Engine Coolant Check ............... 178
Cruise control
Using Cruise Control .................... 143
Cruise Control ............................. 143
Principle of Operation ................... 143
Cup Holders ................................. 108
Front cup holders ....................... 108
Rear cup holders ......................... 109
Digital signal processing (DSP) ........ 250
Changing the DSP settings .......... 250
DSP equaliser ............................... 250
DSP occupancy ............................. 250
Direction Indicators ...................... 59
D

Diesel Particulate Filter
Diesel Particulate Filter ............... 116
Regeneration ............................... 116

307
## Index

### D
- Disabling the passenger airbag
  - Disabling the passenger airbag ..... 32
  - Enabling the passenger airbag ..... 33
  - Fitting the passenger airbag deactivation switch ................. 32
- Disarming the alarm .................. 47
- Disarming the engine immobiliser ...... 44

### F
- Fast forward/reverse ................... 254
- Fastening the seat belts
  - Fastening the seat belts .......... 29
- Floor Mats .................. 112
- Fog Lamps - Front
  - Front Fog Lamps .................. 56
- Fog Lamps - Rear
  - Rear Fog Lamps ................... 57
- Four-Wheel Drive .................... 123
  - Four-wheel drive, high range (4H) .................... 123
  - Four-wheel drive, low range (4L) .................... 124
  - Shifting between 2H and 4H .... 124
  - Shifting between 2H and 4L .... 124
  - Shifting between 4H and 4L .... 124
  - Two-wheel drive, high range (2H) .................... 123
- Front Fog Lamps ...................... 56
- Front Seats ....................................... 98
  - Adjusting the angle of the seatback (Electric seats) .......... 102
  - Adjusting the angle of the seatback (Manual seats) .......... 99
  - Adjusting the height of the driver's seat (Electric seats) .... 101
  - Adjusting the height of the driver's seat (Manual seats) .... 99
  - Adjusting the lumbar support ........ 98
  - Folding the seat backrest (Bench seat Regular cab) .... 100
  - Moving the seats backwards and forwards (Electric seats) .... 101
  - Moving the seats backwards and forwards (Manual seats) .... 98
  - Tilting the seat (Electric seats) .... 102
- Fuel and Refuelling .................... 118

- DPF
  - Diesel Particulate Filter ........... 116
- Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap .. 180
- Driving Hints .............................. 148
- Driving Through Water .................. 150
- Driving through water .................. 150
- Dynamic Stability Control ............. 134
  - Principle of Operation .............. 134

### E
- Electric exterior mirrors ............. 71
  - Electric folding mirrors ........... 71
- Electromagnetic compatibility .......... 295
- Electronic Locking Differential ...... 125
- Ending compact disc playback ........ 259
- Engine Coolant Check .................. 178
  - Checking the coolant level ........ 178
  - Topping up .................. 177, 178, 179
- Engine immobiliser
  - Engine immobiliser .................. 42
  - Principle of Operation .............. 42
- Engine Oil Check
  - Checking the oil level ............ 177
  - Engine Oil Check .................... 177
  - Topping up .......................... 178
- Engine Oil Dipstick - MZ-CD 2.2/MZ-CD 3.2 I5 .................... 176
- Engine Oil Dipstick - MZI 2.5 ........ 176
- Exterior Mirrors ...................... 70
  - Manual folding mirrors ............ 70

Form No.8FX5-EI-17DT
Index

F
Fuel Consumption ................................................. 122
Fuel filler flap ....................................................... 120
Filling ...................................................................... 121
Vehicles equipped with cap system ......................... 120
Fuel Quality - Diesel ............................................. 119
Long-term storage .................................................... 119
Fuel Quality - Petrol ............................................. 118
Fuse Box Locations ................................................. 159
Engine compartment fuse box ............................ 160, 161
Passenger compartment fuse box ....................... 159, 164
Fuse Specification Chart .............................................. 161
Engine compartment fuse box ............................. 161
Passenger compartment fuse box ........................... 164
Fuses ...................................................................... 159

G
Gauges ................................................................... 73
Engine coolant temperature gauge ......................... 73
Fuel gauge .............................................................. 73
Gearbox
Transmission .......................................................... 123
General Driving Points ............................................. 148
Vehicles with a diesel engine .............................. 148
General Information on Radio Frequencies ................. 35

H
Handbrake
Parking Brake ............................................................ 131
Hazard Warning Flashers ........................................ 59
HDC
Hill descent control (HDC) ....................................... 132
Head Restraints ....................................................... 103
Adjusting the head restraint ...................................... 103
Removing the head restraint ..................................... 103
Headlamp Levelling ................................................... 58
Heated Seats ............................................................ 105
Heated Windows ....................................................... 96
Heated windows ....................................................... 96
Heating
Air-Conditioning ...................................................... 88
Hill descent control (HDC) ......................................... 132
Principle of Operation .............................................. 132
Using Hill Descent Control ...................................... 132
Hill Launch Assist ..................................................... 136
Principle of Operation .............................................. 136
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock
Brakes ..................................................................... 131
HLA
Hill Launch Assist ..................................................... 136

I
Ignition Switch
Ignition Switch ............................................................ 113
Immobiliser
Engine immobiliser .................................................. 42
Important audio information .................................... 233
Audio unit labels ...................................................... 233
Disc labels ............................................................... 233
Information Displays ................................................ 83
General Information ................................................... 83
Instrument Cluster .................................................... 73
Instrument Lighting Dimmer ..................................... 106
Interior Lamps .......................................................... 60
Courtesy lamp .......................................................... 60
Interior Mirror .......................................................... 72
Introduction ................................................................ 1

309
Index

I

iPod
   Using an iPod ......................... 290
iPod connection
   Connecting an external device .... 286
ISOFIX Anchor Points ....................... 16
   Attaching a child restraint with a top tether .............................................. 16

J

Jump starting
   Jump-Starting the Vehicle .......... 190
   To connect the booster leads ...... 190
   To start the engine ................... 190

K

Keys and Remote Controls .................. 35

L

Lighting ........................................ 54
   Lighting Control ......................... 54
      Approach lamps ....................... 54
      Emergency stop signal .............. 54
      Headlamp flasher ..................... 54
      High and dipped beam ................ 54
      Lighting control positions .......... 54
Load Carrying ................................. 146
   General Information .................... 146
Load Retaining Fixtures ..................... 147
   Load rest .................................. 147
   Rope hooks ................................ 147
Loading the navigation data
   Loading the navigation data ....... 224

Locking and Unlocking
   Child play protection function ..... 39
   Driver configuration mode .......... 40
   Locking and Unlocking ............... 38
   Locking and unlocking the doors from inside ........................................... 39
   Locking and unlocking the doors with the key ...................................... 38
   Locking and unlocking the doors with the remote control ...................... 38
   Locking the doors individually with the key ........................................ 40
   Locks ....................................... 38

M

Maintenance
   General Information .................... 168
   Maintenance ............................... 168
   Scheduled .................................. 183
   Technical Specifications ............. 182
Manual Air-Conditioning ..................... 89
   Air distribution control ............. 89
   Blower .................................... 90
   Recirculated air ......................... 90
   System settings ........................ 90
   Temperature control .................... 90
Manual Transmission ............................ 123
   Selecting reverse gear ................ 123
Map updates .................................. 232
Message Centre
   Information Displays .................. 83
Mirrors
   Interior mirror ............................ 72
MP3 connection
   Connecting an external device ..... 286
   MP3 display options ..................... 259
   CD text display options .............. 259

Form No.8FX5-EI-17DT
# Index

## M
- MP3 file playback .................................. 256
  - File formats .................................. 257
  - ID3 Tag Version 2 .............................. 258
  - ISO 9660 format ................................ 256
  - MP3 files playback order .................. 257
  - MP3 navigation ................................ 258
  - Multi session .................................. 257
  - Playing a multi session disc ............ 257

## N
- Navigation introduction ......................... 217
  - General Information .......................... 217
- Navigation Quick start .......................... 219
  - Vehicles with SD navigation system .......... 219
- Navigation system ............................... 228
- Navigation unit overview ....................... 221
  - Vehicles with SD navigation system ........... 222
  - News broadcasts .................................. 251

## O
- Occupant protection .............................. 20
  - Principle of Operation ....................... 20
- Oil Check
  - Engine Oil Check ............................... 177
  - On/off control ................................ 245
- Opening and Closing the Bonnet ......... 169
  - Closing the bonnet ........................... 170
  - Opening the bonnet .......................... 169
- Overhead Console ................................ 109

## P
- Parking Aids ........................................ 138
  - Principle of Operation ....................... 138
- Parking Brake ...................................... 131
- Parts and Accessories .......................... 2
- Personalised Settings ........................... 86
  - Language setting ................................ 86
  - Units of measure ................................ 87
- Power Steering Fluid Check .................. 179
  - Topping up ...................................... 179
- Power Windows ...................................... 68
  - Driver's door switches (Double cab) ........ 68
  - Driver's door switches (Regular and Freestyle cab) 69
  - Front and rear passengers' door switches .......... 69
  - Opening and closing the windows automatically (Driver's window only) .......... 69
  - Resetting the memory of the electric windows ............ 69
  - Safety mode ..................................... 70
  - Safety switch for the rear windows ................. 69
- Programming the remote control
  - Programming a new remote control ........ 35
  - Programming the additional key ............. 36
  - Programming the remote control ............. 35
  - Reprogramming the unlocking function .......... 36

## R
- Rear Fog Lamps .................................... 57
- Rear Seats ......................................... 104
  - Folding the rear seat cushion ............... 104
  - Folding the rear seatback - Double cab .......... 104
  - Rear seat arm rest .............................. 105
# Index

## R

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rear View Camera</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switching the rear view camera off</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switching the rear view camera on</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using the display</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduced Engine Performance</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refuelling</td>
<td>8, 122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regional mode (REG)</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote control battery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing the remote control battery</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote control programming</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Programming the remote control</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repairing Minor Paint Damage</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeat compact disc tracks</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type 1</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type 2</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type 3 and 4</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Road Safety</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety information</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Route displays</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Junction zoom</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map display</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navigation display</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Route options menu</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eco settings</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ferry/motorail</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motorway</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Route</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seasonal roads</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toll</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toll sticker</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Running-In</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brakes and clutch</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyres</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Running lamps</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## S

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Safety Precautions</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saving Fuel and Protection of the Environment</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat belt height adjustment</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat belt reminder</td>
<td>31, 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat belts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fastening the seat belts</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seats</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security code</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the clock on the audio unit</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing the time</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exact hour adjustment</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shuffle/random</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type 1</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type 2</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type 3 and 4</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sitting in the Correct Position</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Snow Chains</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Snow Chains</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sound button</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speed Control</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cruise Control</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starter Switch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ignition Switch</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starting a Diesel Engine</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold or hot engine</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starting a Petrol Engine</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold or hot engine</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine idle speed after starting</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flooded engine</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

S
Starting and Stopping the Engine ....... 113
General Information ................. 113
Station preset buttons ............... 247
Station tuning control .............. 246
  Manual tuning ...................... 246
  Scan tuning ......................... 247
  Seek tuning .......................... 246
Steering Wheel ....................... 48
Steering Wheel Lock ............... 114
Storage compartments ............ 110
Switching Off the Engine ....... 117
  Vehicles with a turbocharger .... 117
Symbols Glossary ..................... 2
  Symbols in this handbook .......... 2
  Symbols on your vehicle .......... 2
System settings ...................... 225
  Audio settings ................... 226
  Clock settings .................... 227
Menu structure - Information and
  entertainment display - All vehicles .................. 226
Menu structure - Information and
  entertainment display - Vehicles with
  navigation system ........... 225

T
Tailgate ................................ 146
Technical Specifications
  Capacities and Specifications ..... 211
Telephone .......................... 263
  General Information ........... 263
  Using the telephone .......... 266
Telephone commands ............ 280
  Main settings .................. 282
  Phone ............................ 280
  Phone functions ................ 281
Telephone controls ................. 265
  Remote control ................ 265
Telephone setup .................... 263
  Bond another Bluetooth® phone .................. 264
  Making a phone an active phone .......... 264
  Phonebook .......................... 263
  Phonebook categories ........... 263
Towing a Trailer ...................... 153
  Safety chains ..................... 156
  Trailer brakes .................... 157
  Trailer hitch ...................... 155
  Trailer lights ..................... 156
  Trailer tow module ............... 156
  Trailer towing tips ............... 157
  Tyres ............................ 155
  Weight limits .................... 154
Towing Points ......................... 166
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels... 166
  All vehicles ...................... 166
  Vehicles with automatic
  transmission ................... 167
Track selection ....................... 253
  Type 2, 3 and 4 ................ 253
  Type 3 and 4 ..................... 253
Traffic information control ........ 248
  Activating traffic announcements .................. 248
  Ending traffic announcements .......... 231, 249
  Traffic announcement volume .......... 249
Traffic Message Channel .......... 231
  Principle of Operation .......... 231
Transmission ......................... 123
Trip Computer ........................ 83
  Controls .......................... 83
Type approvals ..................... 293, 294

313
Index

T
Tyre Care ............................................ 202
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System ..... 204
Tyre Pressures
  Technical Specifications ........... 209
Tyres
  Wheels and Tyres ..................... 193

U
Under Bonnet Overview - MZ-CD
  2.2 ........................................... 172
Under Bonnet Overview - MZ-CD 3.2
  IS ............................................. 174
Under Bonnet Overview - MZI 2.5 .... 171
USB
  Using a USB device ................. 287
  USB port .................................. 111
  Using a USB device ................. 287
  Radio .................................. 288
  SD Navigation units .............. 288
Using an iPod ............................. 290
  Radio .................................. 290
  SD Navigation units ............ 291
Using Cruise Control ................. 143
  Cancelling the set speed ........ 145
  Changing the set speed .......... 144
  Resuming the set speed ......... 144
  Setting a speed .................... 144
  Switching cruise control off ... 145
  Switching cruise control on .. 143
Using Dynamic Stability Control .... 135
  2-wheel drive vehicles .......... 135
  4-wheel drive vehicles .......... 135
Using Hill Descent Control ........ 132
  HDC operation ....................... 133
  Selecting HDC ...................... 132
Using seat belts during pregnancy ... 31

V
Vehicle battery ................................ 190
Vehicle Care ................................ 188
Vehicle identification ................. 210
Vehicle Identification Number
  Vehicle Identification Number .... 210
Vehicle Identification Plate .......... 210
Vehicle Loading .......................... 152
  GAW (Gross Axle Weight) ....... 152
  GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight) .... 152
Vehicle recovery ......................... 166
Ventilation
  Air-Conditioning ..................... 88
  Vents
    Air Vents .............................. 89

Using Snow Chains
  Using Snow Chains ................... 204
Using the Parking Aid - Vehicles With:
  Rear Parking Aid ................. 139
Using the telephone .................... 266
  Changing the active phone .... 268
  Debonding a bonded phone .... 268
  Making a call ...................... 266
  Muting the microphone .......... 268
  Receiving a second incoming
call .......................................... 267
  Receiving an incoming call .... 267
Using TMC ................................. 231
  Ending traffic announcements .. 231
  Traffic announcement ............ 231
Using TMC messages ................ 231
Using voice control ................. 270
  Name tag ............................ 271
  System operation .................. 270
Using Winter Tyres
  Using Winter Tyres ................ 203

Index

V

VIN
Vehicle Identification Number .... 210
Voice control .................................. 49
Principle of Operation ................. 269

W

Warning Lamps and Indicators ......... 74
ABS warning lamp ......................... 74
Airbag warning lamp ..................... 75
Brake system warning lamp ........... 74
Cruise control ............................. 81
Direction indicators ....................... 79
Door open warning lamp ............... 79
DPF (Diesel Particulate Filter) ....... 78
Dynamic stability control (DSC) indicator ........................................ 76
Electronic locking differential (ELD) indicator ........................................ 78
Engine warning lamps .................. 76
Four-wheel drive indicator .......... 77
Four-wheel drive low (4L) indicator ........................................ 77
Front fog lamp indicator .............. 80
Gear shift indicator lamp (Manual only) ........................................ 80
Glow plug indicator - For Diesel Vehicle ........................................ 79
Headlamp indicator ...................... 80
High beam indicator ..................... 80
Ice/Frost warning indicator .......... 79
Ignition warning lamp ................. 75
Low fuel level warning lamp .......... 75
Oil Change Reminder Indicator (Diesel only) ........................................ 76
Oil pressure warning lamp ............ 76
Rear fog lamp indicator ............... 80
Seat belt indicator ....................... 80
Vehicle immobiliser indicator ........ 74
Washer fluid level indicator ........... 78
Water-in-fuel indicator ................. 78
Washer Fluid Check ....................... 181
Washers
Wipers and Washers .................. 50

315
Index

W

Washing
  Cleaning the Exterior .................. 188
Waveband button .......................... 246
Wheels and Tyres .......................... 193
  General Information ................... 193
  Technical Specifications .............. 209
Windscreen Washers ....................... 51
Windscreen Wipers ........................ 50
  Intermittent wipe ...................... 50
Winter Tyres
  Using Winter Tyres .................... 203
Wipers and Washers ...................... 50